

827 e. 35.

A NEW  
PORTUGUESE  
GRAMMAR  
IN FOUR PARTS,

CONTAINING

- I. Rules for the modification and use of the different parts of speech.
- II. The Syntax, in which are explained, after a more copious manner than hitherto attempted, the peculiar uses of the PORTUGUESE PARTICLES.
- III. A Vocabulary, more particularly containing the Terms of COMMERCE, WAR, and NAVIGATION, with a variety of Phrases and familiar Dialogues, taken from common conversation, and the best authors.
- IV. Various Passages extracted from the most approved modern and ancient writers, with a view to facilitate the reading of the ancient and most valuable Portuguese books.

---

THE SECOND EDITION.

---

By ANTHONY VIEYRA TRANSTAGANO,  
Teacher of the Portuguese and Italian Languages.

---

*Necesse est enim inter quos mercaturæ & contractuum sint, inter eos quoque sermonis esse commercia.*      UBERTUS FOLIETA.

---

LONDON,  
Printed for J. NOURSE, Bookseller to His MAJESTY,  
MDCCLXXVII.





## ROBERT ORME, Esq.

S I R,

**T**HE best Historians and the greatest Poet my country has produced, have dedicated their talents to the subject which at present employs your's; and as no one is more sensible than yourself of the Geographical, Commercial, and Political Knowledge, which may be derived from an acquaintance with their writings on Indian affairs, this work of mine can no where be addressed with greater propriety than to yourself.

I am, S I R,

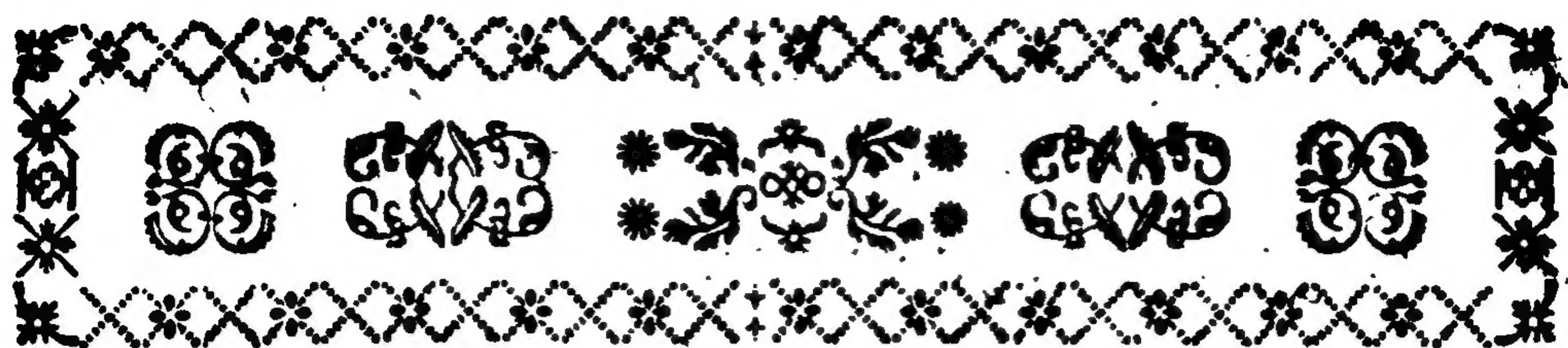
Your most humble servant,

ANTHONY VIEYRA.









# P R E F A C E.

*S the usefulness of the Portuguese  
A language is so well known to all Eng-  
lish merchants, who carry on a general  
trade with the different parts of the  
known world, it will be needless to use any argu-  
ments here to prove it; and I shall reserve what  
I have to say on the copiousness and energy of this  
language for the Preface to an English and  
Portuguese Dictionary I am now engaged in, the  
First Part of which, being greatly forwarded,  
shall soon be sent to the press.*

*The reader will find in the First Part of this  
Grammar what is material as a foundation of the  
whole.*

*At the end of the Second Part is a full expla-  
nation of the Particles, on which I have bestowed  
more time and labour, because this subject has  
been hitherto much neglected, although the prin-  
cipal ornament and elegance, not only of the Por-  
tuguese,*



*tuguese, but of every other language, chiefly consist in the proper arrangement and judicious interspersion of these words.*

*In the Third Part is a larger collection than hitherto published of the terms of Trade, War, Navigation, &c. which the present intercourse between the two nations renders particularly useful.*

*Having found a great difficulty of procuring Portuguese books in this country, I have been commonly obliged to furnish with part of my private collection those Gentlemen whom I have had the honour of assisting in the study of this language, during my residence here; therefore, in the Fourth Part I have given some passages selected out of the best Portuguese Authors, and which will, at the same time, facilitate the reading of their most eminent Historians, such as Goes, Barros, Pinto, &c. whose Orthography differs considerably from the more modern.*





# C O N T E N T S.

## P A R T I.

<i>O F the Portuguese Alphabet, and the Manner of pronouncing each separate Letter.</i>	Page 1
<i>Of the Manner of pronouncing the Portuguese Letters as combined in Syllables.</i>	2
<i>Of the Articles.</i>	8
<i>Of the Nouns.</i>	11
<i>Of the Pronouns.</i>	25
<i>Of Verbs.</i>	44
<i>Of the Participles.</i>	113
<i>Of the Adverbs.</i>	114
<i>Of the Prepositions.</i>	117
<i>Of the Conjunctions.</i>	118
<i>Interjective Particles.</i>	120
<i>Some Abbreviations used in the Portuguese Language.</i>	121

## P A R T II.

<i>Of the Division of Syntax.</i>	122
<i>Of the Syntax of Articles.</i>	126
<i>Of the Syntax of Nouns, and first of the Substantives</i>	131
<i>Of the Syntax of Adjectives.</i>	132
<i>Of the Syntax of the Comparatives and Superlatives.</i>	135
<i>Of the Syntax of Pronouns.</i>	136
<i>Of the Syntax of Verbs.</i>	139
<i>Of the Syntax of Participles and Gerunds.</i>	152
<i>Of Prepositions.</i>	153
<i>Of the Portuguese Orthography.</i>	191
<i>Of the Quantity of Syllables, and their Sound.</i>	213
<i>Etymology of the Portuguese Tongue from the Latin.</i>	219

P A R T



# C O N T E N T S

## P A R T III.

<i>The most elegant Phrases of the Portuguese Language.</i>	222
<i>A Vocabulary of Words much used in Discourse.</i>	253
<i>Of the Portuguese Coin.</i>	310
<i>A Collection of Portuguese Proverbs.</i>	ibid.
<i>Familiar Dialogues.</i>	320

## P A R T IV.

<i>Several useful and entertaining Passages, whereof the greatest Part is collected from the best Portuguese Writers, as Andrade, Barros, &amp;c.</i>	336
---	-----

## E R R A T A.

Page 66. l. 2 and 3. for *vendra*, *venedras*, read *vendera*, *venderas*. P. 69. l. 26. for *admittissimos* read *admittissimos*. P. 78. l. 20. for *trarie* read *trarei*.

*Lately Published,*

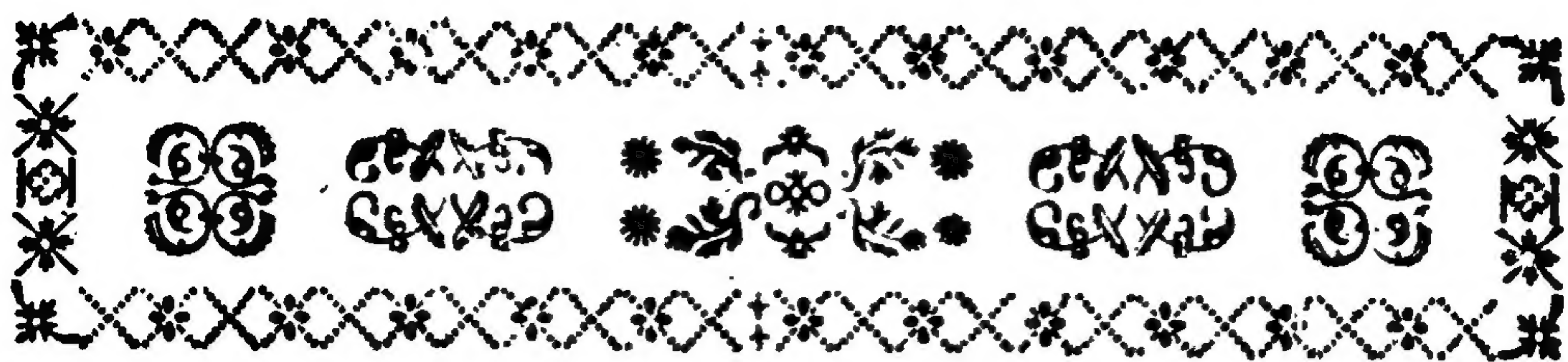
In Two Large Volumes in Quarto, Price 2l. 12s. 6d.  
Bound,

**A** DICTIONARY of the PORTUGUESE and ENGLISH LANGUAGES, in Two Parts; Portuguese and English, and English and Portuguese.—Wherein, 1. The Words are explained in their different meanings, by examples from the best Portuguese and English writers. 2. The Etymology of the Portuguese generally indicated from the Latin, Arabic, and other languages. Throughout the whole are interspersed a great number of phrases and proverbs.

By ANTHONY VIEYRA TRANSTAGANO.

Printed for J. Nourse, in the Strand, Bookseller to his Majesty.





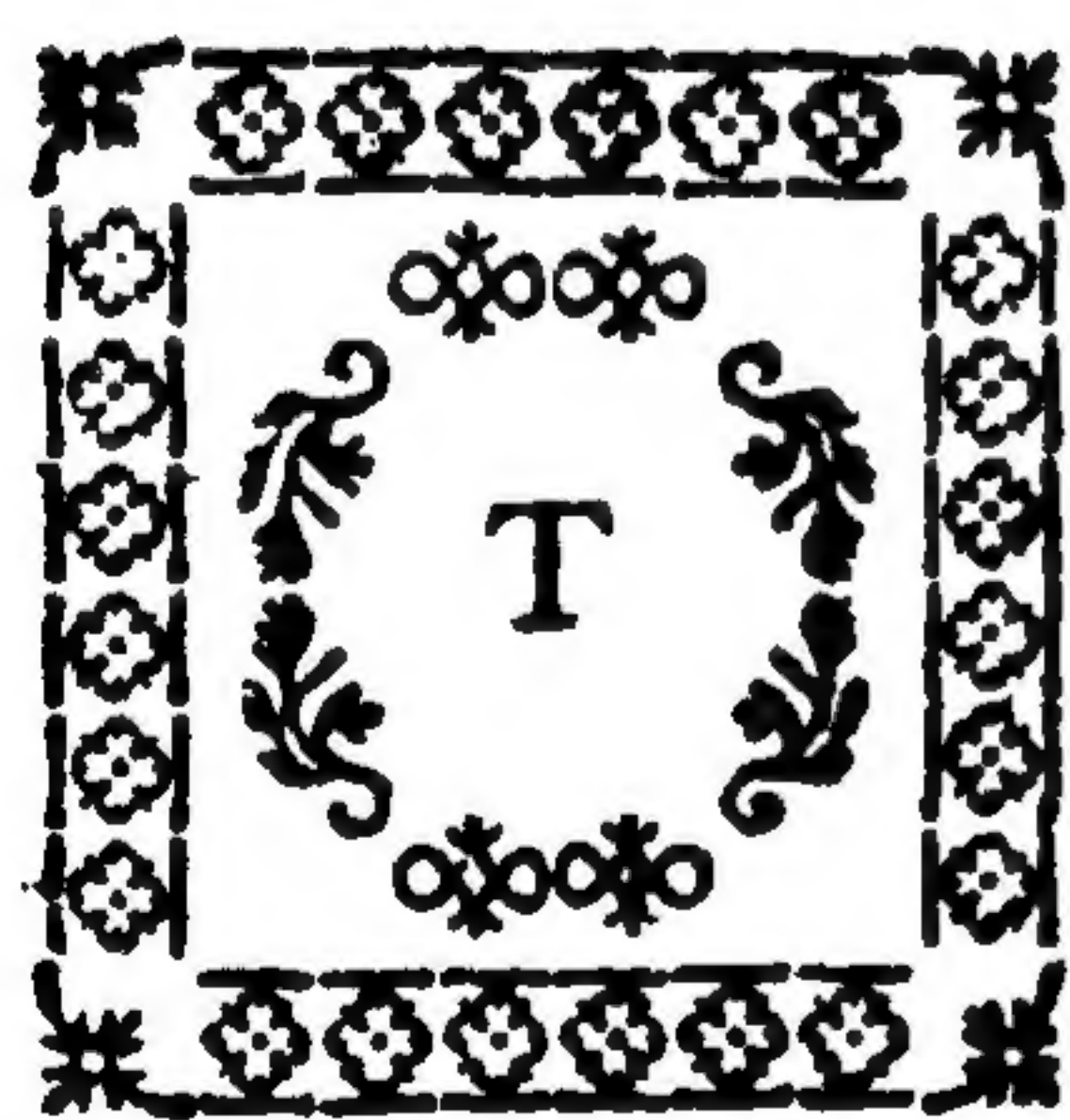
A N E W  
P O R T U G U E S E  
G R A M M A R.



P A R T I.

C H A P. I.

*Of the Portugüese Alphabet, and the Manner of pronouncing each separate Letter.*



THE Portuguese alphabet contains twenty-four letters, viz.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

The A is expressed by a sound like that of *a* in the English words *at*, *rat*, *fat*, &c.

B is expressed by a sound like that of the *be* in the first syllable of the English word *Betty*.

C is expressed by a sound like that of the first syllable of the English word *celebrated*.

D is expressed by a sound like that of the first syllable of the word *declare*.

B

E is



E is expressed by a sound like that we give to the English *e* when we pronounce the word *care*.

F is expressed by the same sound as in English.

G is expressed by a sound like that of the first syllable in the English word *generation*.

H is expressed by a sound like that of the English word *agbaf*, if you cut off the two last letters *st*, and keep the accent upon the second *a*.

I is expressed by the sound of our *ee*.

J is called *j consoante*, i. e. the *j* consonant, which appellation we must read *ee consoante*, and has the same power as the *g* before *e* or *i*.

L, as in English.

M, as in English.

N, as in English.

O has nearly the same sound as in the English word *fiore*.

P is expressed by a sound like that of *pe* in the English word *penny*.

Q is expressed by a sound like that of the English *k*.

R is expressed by a sound like that of the English participle *erred*, if you cut off the last letter *d*.

S, as in English.

T is expressed by a sound like that of *tha* in the English word *Thames*.

U is expressed by a sound like that of *oo* in the English word *poop*.

V is expressed by a sound like that of *oo*; they call it also *oo consoante*, that is, the *v* consonant.

X is expressed by a sound like that of our pronoun personal *she*, if you add an *s* to it, or as *sbees*.

Y is expressed by a sound like that of *i* in the English word *visable*, and is called *ypsilon*.

Z is expressed by the sound of our English *zed*, leaving out the *d*, or *zea*.



*Of the manner of pronouncing the Portuguese Letters as combined in Syllables; and first*

*Of the Vowels.*

A.

A in Portuguese is commonly pronounced like *a* in the following English words, *adapted castle*, &c. It is sometimes pronounced with less strength, and closely, as in *ambos*, where the *a* is pronounced like *a* in the English word *ambition*.

E.

The letter *e* has two different sounds; the one open, like *ay* in *dayly*; the other close, like that in the English word *mellow*. Examples of the former, *fê*, faith, *pê*, foot, &c. Examples of the latter, *rede*, a net, *parede*, a wall, &c. In this consists a great part of the beauty of the Portuguese pronunciation, which, however, cannot be learned but by a long use, notwithstanding all the rules that can be given for it.

I.

Is pronounced like *ee* in the English word *steel*, *aço*; or like *i* in the English words *still*, *ainda*; *visível*, visivel.

O.

This vowel has two sounds; one open, as in the word *dó*, pity, where the *o* is pronounced like our *o* in the word *store*; the other close, as in the Portuguese article *do*, of, and the word *redondo*, round, where the *o* is to be pronounced like our *u* in *turret* or *stumble*. It is likewise in the different pronunciation of this vowel that consists the greatest part of the beauty of the Portuguese pronunciation; but it can be learned only by a long use.

B 2

U.



## U.

The vowel *u* is pronounced like *oo* in the English.

## Y.

Y has the same sound as the Portuguese vowel *i*.

## Of Consonants.

## B.

Keeps always the sound as in English.

## C.

Before *a*, *o*, *u*, and the consonants *l*, *r*, is properly pronounced as *k*; but before *e* and *i* it takes the hissing sound of *s*: it takes also the sound of *s* before *a*, *o*, *u*, when there is a dash under it thus *ç*.

☞ *I could wish the learned in Portugal would follow the resolution of the Royal Academy of Madrid, by expunging such dash, and placing the s in its stead, since they have in both languages the same hissing sound, which frequently occasions great confusion in the proper use of them.*

C before *h* is pronounced like *ch* in the English words *charity*, *cherry*, &c.

Double *c* is sounded only before *e* and *i*, the first with the sound of *k*, and the other with the hissing sound of *s*; as in *accidente*, *accident*, pronounce *ak-sidente*.

## D.

Is pronounced in Portuguese as in English.

## F.

Is pronounced always as in English.

## G.

Before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and before consonants, is pronounced as in English: example, *gosto*, taste; *gaiola*, cage; *grito*, a cry.

G be-

G before *e* and *i* denotes the sound of *j* consonant.

*Gua* sounds almost like our *wa* : example, *guarda*, pronounce *gwarda*.

*Gue*, *gui*, are pronounced as *gue* in the word *guest*, and *gi* in the word *gift* ; but in the verbs *arguir* and *redarguiar* it is to be pronounced as if it was written *argueer*, &c.

## H.

The letter *h* is never aspirated nor pronounced at the beginning of words, as *bora*, an hour ; *bomem*, a man : but, according to the modern orthography, all those words are written without an *h*.

H when preceded by a *c*, makes a sound with it like our *ch*. See the letter C, and also the letters L and N.

## J.

Is pronounced like our *j* consonant.

## K.

The Portuguese have no such letter as *k*.

## L.

Is pronounced in Portuguese as in English.

*Lh* is pronounced like *g* before an *l* in the Italian words *figlio*, *foglio*, &c.

## M.

Is pronounced as in English, being placed before a vowel with which it forms a syllable ; but when it is at the end of words, and preceded by the letter *e*, causes in Portuguese a nasal sound like that of the French words *vin*, wine ; *pain*, bread ; except *sôem*, *tôem*, from the verbs *soar*, *toar*, and some others.

M at the end of words, preceded by an *a*, *o*, or *i*, has such a nasal obtuse sound that only may be learned from a master's mouth.



## N.

N being before a vowel with which it forms a syllable, is pronounced as in English; otherwise, it only gives a nasal sound to the vowel that precedes it.

N before *b* has the same sound as *gn* in Italian, or in the French words *Espagne, Allemagne*.

## P.

P and *ph* are pronounced as in English.

## Q.

Is pronounced like *k*: example, *quero*, I am willing, pronounce *kero*.

☞ The vowel *u* after *q* in the word *qual*, which, must be pronounced so smoothly as to render it almost imperceptible to the ear, as in the English word *quantity*, in order to distinguish it from the substantive *cal*, lime.

## R.

R and double *r* are pronounced as in English.

## S.

S and *ss* are pronounced as in English.

S between two vowels is pronounced like a *z*; particularly in the words ending in *oso*, as *amoroso, cuidadoso, &c.* and, as some say, in those that end in *esa*, as *mesa, defesa, &c.*

## T.

Is pronounced as in English.

## V.

Is pronounced as in English.

## X.

Is pronounced as *sh* in English; except *axioma*, in which, according to *Feyjo*, the *x* is to be pronounced like *c*.

X after



X after the vowel *e* is pronounced like *cs*, in the words *extençam*, *extenuado*, *expulso*, *excellente*, and some other words.

X between two vowels is pronounced like *gz* in the words *exactamente*, *exornar*; except *Alexandre*, *Paixam*, *Puxo*, *baxo*, and some other words, that only may be learned by use. You must take care in pronouncing the *g* so smoothly as to render it almost imperceptible to the ear.

## Z

Is pronounced as in English; but at the end of words is pronounced like *s*, as *rapáz*, boy; *Francez*, French; *perdiz*, partridge; *voz*, voice; *luz*, light, &c.

The tittle, or little dash, which the Portuguese call *til*, is set by them over some letters instead of *m*; as *bē* instead of *bem*; *convē* instead of *convem*; *hūa* instead of *huma*; and as it is then to be considered as an *m*, see what we have said about the pronunciation of the same letter.

They also set their *til* over the vowels *ao*, *aa*, in the end of words, thus, *āo*, *āa*. See what we have said above of *m* at the end of words preceded by an *a*.

## Of Diphthongs.

The meeting of many vowels in one and the same syllable is called Diphthongs, and they are the following in the Portuguese language.

*Aa*, as in *maçaã*, an apple.

*Ae*, as in *caēs*, dogs.

*Ay*, as in *pay*, father.

*Ai*, as in *mais*, more.

*Ao*, as in *pao*, wood.

*Au*, as in *causa*, a cause.

*Lio*, as in *ceo*, heaven.

*Ey*, as in *rey*, king.



*Ei*, as in *amei*, I loved.

*Eu*, as *eu*, I.

*Io*, as *vio*, he saw.

*Oe*, as in *poēm*, they put ; *compoēm*, they compose ; *meloēs*, melons, &c.

*Oy*, as in *boy*, an ox ; *foy*, he was.

*Ou*, as *dou*, I give ; *sou*, I am.

*Ue*, as *azues*, blue.

☞ The two vowels in the following words must be plainly and distinctly pronounced.

*Ai*, as in *paiz*, a country, pronounce *pa-iz*.

*Ea*, as in *lamprea*, a lamprey, pronounce *lampre-a*.

*Ia*, as *clemencia*, clemency, pronounce *clemenci-a*.

*Io*, as in *navío*, a ship, pronounce *naví-o*.

*Iu*, as *viuva*, a widow, pronounce *vi-uva*.

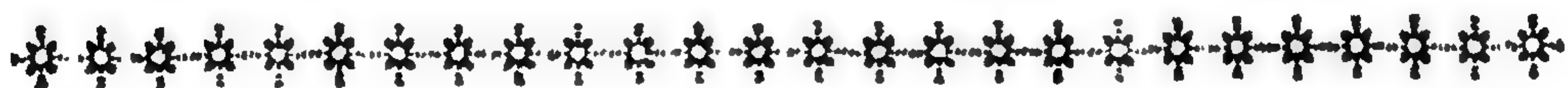
*Oa*, as *Lisboa*, Lisbon, *proa*, a poop, pronounce, *Lisbo-a*, &c.

*Oe*, as *tôem*, *sôem*, from the verbs *tóar* and *soar*, pronounce *to-em*, &c.

*Oi*, as *roim*, bad, pronounce *ro-im*.

*Oo*, as *cooperaçam*, co-operation, pronounce *co-operaçãõ*.

*Ui*, as *ruina*, a ruin, pronounce *ru-ina*.



## C H A P. II.

### *Of the Articles.*

**T**HOSE particles called Articles, are properly prepositions, commonly put before nouns, to shew their gender, number, and case.

These articles are definite or indefinite.

### *Of the Definite Articles.*

The definite marks the gender, number, and case, of the nouns which it precedes.

The



The English tongue has but one definite article, namely *the*, which serves for both numbers.

The Portuguese has two, viz. *o* for the masculine and *a* for the feminine.

The definite articles have five cases, the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative; because the vocative in the nouns is designed and preceded by the particle *o*.

*The Declension of the Masculine Article o.*

Singular.	Plural.
Nominative, <i>o</i> , the.	Nominative, <i>os</i> , the.
Genitive, <i>do</i> , of the.	Genitive, <i>dos</i> , of the.
Dative, <i>ao</i> , or <i>o</i> , to the.	Dative, <i>aos</i> , or <i>os</i> , to the.
Accusative, <i>ao</i> , or <i>o</i> , the.	Accusative, <i>aos</i> , or <i>os</i> , the.
Ablative, <i>do</i> , from or by the.	Ablative, <i>dos</i> , from or by the.

*The Declension of the Feminine Article a.*

Singular.	Plural.
Nominative, <i>a</i> , the.	Nominative, <i>as</i> , the.
Genitive, <i>da</i> , of the.	Genitive, <i>das</i> , of the.
Dative, <i>á</i> , to the.	Dative, <i>ás</i> , to the.
Accusative <i>a</i> , the.	Accusative, <i>as</i> , the.
Ablative, <i>da</i> , from the.	Ablative, <i>das</i> , from or by the.

✎ Observe, the Portuguese have an article for each gender, both in the singular and the plural.

*Of the Indefinite Article.*

The indefinite article may be put before the masculine as well as the feminine gender, before the plural as well as the singular number.

The indefinite article has but four cases, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, and ablative.

One may put *de* before a noun masculine as well as a feminine, as *buma coroa de rey*, a king's crown; the word *rey* is masculine: *bum chapeo de palha*, a hat of straw; the word *palha* is of the feminine gender.

The indefinite article *de* is also put before the plural as well as the singular number: example, *buma coroa*



*coroa de flores*, a crown of flowers; *hum prato de arroz*, a plate of rice.

*Declension of the Indefinite Article.*

Genitive, *de*, of.

Accusative, *a*.

Dative, *á*, to.

Ablative, *de*, from.

☞ The accusative of this article is not expressed in English: example, *Eu conheci a seu pay*, I knew his father; *eu conheci a sua may*, I knew his mother.

The indefinite article may be also put before infinitives, and signifies *to*; as, *he tempo de fallar, de dormir, de ler, &c.* it is time to speak, to sleep, to read, &c. *eu vou a ver, a fallar*, I am going to see, to speak.

N. B. Whenever we meet *of* and *to* in English, followed by *the*, remember they are the indefinite articles, and then we must make use of the indefinite article *de*, or *a*, in Portuguese.

When the verb is in the infinitive mood, and serves as nominative to the following verb, they put the article *o* before it; as *o comer e o dormir são as cousas mais necessarias nesta vida*, eating and sleeping are the greatest necessities of life.

When the preposition *in* is followed by the article *the*, or by a pronoun possessive, as *in the, in my, in thy, in his*, we must render it in Portuguese by *em o* or *no*, *em os* or *nos*, for the masculine; and by *em a* or *na*, *em as* or *nas*, for the feminine: example, in the garden, *em o jardim*, or *no jardim*; in the street, *em a rua*, or *na rua*; in thy book, *em o teu*, or *no teu livro*; in his bed, *em a sua*, or *na sua cama*, &c.

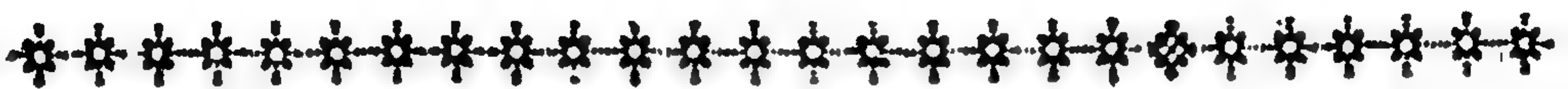
When after the preposition *with*, which in Portuguese is expressed by *com*, we find the article *the*, or a pronoun possessive, as *with the, with my, &c.* we may say *com o* or *co*, *com a* or *coa*, *com os* or *cos*, *com as* or *coas*: example, with the prince, *com o* or *co príncipe*; with the sword, *com a* or *coa espada*; with the eyes, *com os* or *cos olhos*; with my books, *com os* or *cos meus livros*, &c.

When



When the preposition *with* is followed by a pronoun possessive, and this by a noun of quality or kindred, as *with your majesty, with your highness, with your excellency, with his brother, &c.* *with* must then be rendered by the Portuguese *com*, as *com vossa majestade, com vossa alteza, com seu irmão*, without using the article.

Observe, that the dative and accusative of the indefinite article sometimes are not expressed in English, particularly before the pronouns personal and proper names; example, *convem a nos*, it behoves us; *Antonio matou a Pedro*, Anthony killed Peter.



## C H A P. III.

### *Of the Nouns.*

**T**HE Portuguese nouns have several sorts of terminations, as will appear below.

They have but two genders, the masculine and feminine.

The Portuguese nouns have no variation of cases, like the Latin, and it is the article only that distinguishes the case.

### *Of Nouns ending in a ; and first of their Declension.*

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>a rainha</i> , the queen.	Nom. <i>as rainhas</i> , the queens.
Gen. <i>da rainha</i> , of the queen.	Gen. <i>das rainhas</i> , of the queens.
Dat. <i>á rainha</i> , to the queen.	Dat. <i>ás rainhas</i> , to the queens.
Acc. <i>a rainha</i> , the queen.	Acc. <i>as rainhas</i> , the queens.
Voc. <i>o rainha</i> , O queen.	Voc. <i>o rainhas</i> , O queens.
Abl. <i>do ou pella rainha</i> , from or by the queen.	Abl. <i>das ou pellas rainhas</i> from or by the queens.

We have already observed that the Portuguese Nouns have no variation of cases; therefore there is  
no



no occasion to exhibit more examples of their declensions, because you have nothing to do but to change the article according to their gender.

*Of the Genders of Nouns ending in a.*

Nouns ending in *a* are generally of the feminine gender; as *rosa*, a rose; *janella*, a window, &c. You must except *dia*, a day; *planeta*, a planet; and other nouns ending in *a*, belonging to a man; as *mariôla*, a porter; *jesuita*, a jesuit: those derived from the Greek are likewise masculine; as *dogma*, *epigramma*, *clima*; except those of sciences, as *matemática*, *theologia*, &c.

Except also from this general rule some nouns that have the accent upon the last syllable; as *alvará*, a charter, or a prince's letters patent; *Pará*, one of the captainships of the Portuguese America, &c.

Observe, that the plural of the nouns ending in *a* is formed by adding the letter *s* to the singular; as likewise the plural of all nouns that terminate in vowels.

Observe also, that the nouns ending in *ãa* are of the feminine gender, and form their plural as those ending in *a*.

*Of the Gender of Nouns ending in e.*

Nouns ending in *e* are generally of the masculine gender; as *dente*, a tooth; *valle*, a valley; *ventre*, the womb, &c.

The exceptions are, *fé*, faith; *fonte*, a fountain; *chave*, a key; *torre*, a tower; *ave*, a fowl; *carne*, flesh or meat; *gente*, people; *morte*, death; *neve*, snow; *noite*, night; *ponte*, a bridge; *peste*, plague; *parte*, part; *serpente*, a serpent; *lebre*, a hare.

Except also all names of virtues, vices, faculties, and passions of the mind; as *virtude*, virtue; *sãntidade*, holiness; *bondade*, goodness; *vaidade*, vanity; *ociosidade*, idleness, &c.

Thirdly,



Thirdly, *idade*, age; *velhice*, oldness; *rusticidade*, rusticity; *capacidade*, capacity; *felicidade*, happiness; *sorte*, fortune; *arte*, art; *arvore*, a tree; *fertilidade*, fertility; *sede*, thirst; *sebe*, a hedge; *couve*, cabbage; *herdade*, a farm or manor; *chaminé*, a chimney; *parede*, a wall; *saude*, health; *rede*, a net; *maré*, the tide; *febre*, fever; *galé*, a galley, &c.

*Of the Gender of Nouns ending in i.*

Nouns ending in *i* are masculine; as *extasi*, a rapture; *nebri*, a hawk, &c.

*Of Nouns ending in o.*

Nouns ending in *o* are of the masculine gender; as *livro*, a book; *filho*, a son; *braço*, an arm; *vestido*, a garment; *espelho*, a looking-glass; &c. Except, *navio*, a ship; *filbó*, a fritter or pancake; *eiró*, an eel.

*Of Nouns ending in u.*

All nouns ending in *u* are masculine; as *perú*, a turkey; *grou*, a crane.

*Of the Nouns ending in y.*

Nouns ending in *y* are of the masculine gender; as *rey*, king; *pay*, father; *boy*, ox, &c. except *ley*, a law; *may*, a mother.

*Of the other Terminations of Nouns, or of those terminating in Consonants.*

1. All nouns ending in *al* are masculine; as *sinhal*, a sign or token; *sal*, salt. You must except *cal*, lime, which is feminine, and has no plural.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the letter *l* of the singular into *es*; as *sinaes* from *sinhal*; *animaes* from *animal*.

2. Nouns ending in *ar* are of the masculine gender; as *ar*, air.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular, as *ares* from *ar*.

Some



Some nouns ending in *as* in the plural are feminine, and have no singular; as *migas*, *exequias*, &c.

3. Nouns ending in *az* are of the masculine gender; as *rapaz*, a boy: except *paz*, peace. The plural is formed as the last.

4. Nouns ending in *el* are masculine; as *annél*, a ring; *papél*, paper, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *l* of the singular into *is*; as *anneis*, from *annél*; *papeis*, from *papél*.

5. Nouns ending in *em* are of the masculine gender; as *homem*, a man; *pentem*, a comb, &c. Except *ordem*, order; *viagem*, a voyage; *virgem*, a virgin, &c. but *salvagem*, a sort of beast, is common.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *m* of the singular into *ns*; as *homens* from *homem*, &c.

6. Nouns ending in *er* are of the masculine gender; as *poder*, power; *prazer*, pleasure, &c. Except *colhér*, a spoon; *mulhér*, a woman.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular, as *colheres*, from *colhér*.

7. Nouns ending in *ez* are of the masculine gender; as *freguez*, a parishioner or a customer; *mez*, month; *arnez*, *levez*, *revez*, &c. Except *surdez*, deafness; *torquez*, *vez*, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular, as *freguezes*, from *freguez*; but *tez* has no plural.

8. Nouns ending in *il* are of the masculine gender; as *funíl*, a funnel; *barríl*, a barrel.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *l* of the singular into *s*, as *funís*, from *funíl*, &c. Except *aquátíl*, *fácil*, *pensíl*, &c. which change the *il* into *eis* in the plural, as *fáceis* from *fácil*.

9. Nouns ending in *im* are of the masculine gender, as *espadim*, a little sword.

The



The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *m* of the singular into *ns*, as *espadins* from *espadim*.

10. Nouns ending in *ir* or *yr* are of the masculine gender: but *martir* ou *martyr*, a martyr, is common.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular.

11. All nouns ending in *iz* are of the masculine gender; as *apprendiz*, an apprentice; *nariz*, nose; *verniz*, varnish: *matiz*, a shadowing in painting; *chafariz*, *chamariz*, &c. Except *aboiz*, *perdez*, *raiz*, *codorniz*, *matriz*, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular, as *perdizes* from *perdez*.

12. Nouns ending in *ol* are of the masculine gender; as *anzol*, a hook; *sól*, the sun, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *l* of the singular into *es*, as *anzoes* from *anzol*, &c.

13. Nouns ending in *om* are of the masculine gender; as *som*, sound; *dom*, gift, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *m* of the singular into *ns*, as *sons* from *som*, &c.

14. Nouns ending in *or* are of the masculine gender; as *amôr*, love; *temôr*, fear, &c. except *dôr*, pain; *côr*, colour, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular, as *amores* from *amor*.

Nouns ending in *os* are of the masculine gender; as *Deos*, God.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *s* into *zes*, as *Deozes* from *Deos*.

15. Nouns ending in *oz* are of the masculine gender; as *albernóz*, a Moorish coat; *arrôz*, rice; *algôz*, hangman, &c. Except *nóz*, a walnut; *vóz*, voice; *fôz*, the mouth of a river.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular.

16. Nouns



16. Nouns ending in *ul* or *um* are of the masculine gender; as *sul*, the south; *Saúl*, Saul, a proper name of a man; *atúm*, tunny-fish.

The plural of those ending in *ul*, according to the learned *Bluteau*, is formed by changing the *l* of the singular into *es*, as *sues* from *sul*, *azues* from *azul*, blue, &c. Except *consules* from *consul*, a consul.

The plural of those ending in *um* is formed by changing the *m* of the singular into *ns*, as *atuns* from *atúm*.

17. Nouns ending in *uz* are of the masculine gender; as *arcabúz*, an arquebuss.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular.

18. Nouns ending in *aō* are of the feminine gender: as *maō*, hand; *composiçaō*, composition; *oraçaō*, oration, &c. Except *paō*, bread; *anaō*, a dwarf; *ouçaō*, a hand-worm; *trovaō*, thunder; *esquadraō*, a squadron; *piaō*, a child's top; *borraō*, a blot with ink; *papelaō*, brown paper; *chaō*, the ground; *quinbaō*, a share.

There is no certain rule for the formation of the plural of the nouns ending in *aō*; because some change the *aō* of the singular into *ães*, as *Alemães*, from *Alemaō*, a German; *capitães*, from *capitaō*, a captain; *caēs*, from *caō*, a dog; *paēs*, from *paō*, a loaf; &c. Some change the *aō* of the singular into *ãos*; as *cidadãos*, from *cidadão*, a citizen; *christãos*, from *christão*, a christian; *cortezãos*, from *cortezão*, a courtier; *villaãos*, from *villaão*, a villain, &c. Some change the *aō* of the singular into *ões*; as *esquadrões*, from *esquadraō*, a squadron; *trovões*, from *trovaō*, thunder; *conclusões*, from *conclusaō*, a conclusion or theses sheet; *orações*, from *oraçaō*, an oration: and generally all the Portuguese nouns that may be easily made English, by changing their termination *çaō* into the English termination *tion*, as *declinaçaō*, declension or declination; *consideraçaō*, consideration, &c. and these are of the feminine gender.

19. All



19. All nouns signifying a male must be of the masculine gender; as *duque*, duke; *marquez*, a marquis; *conde*, count: and those denoting a female are always feminine.

You may form two general rules from what has been said about the formation of the plural of nouns, viz.

I. That all the nouns ending in any of the vowels have their plural formed by adding the letter *s* to the singular.

II. That the plural of the nouns ending in *az*, *ez*, *iz*, *oz*, *uz*, is formed by adding *es* to the singular.

### *Of the Augmentatives.*

The Portuguese have their augmentatives, which are formed by the increase of one or two syllables, which they add to the end of their nouns, and serve either to augment the signification of nouns, or to declare a thing that is contemptible; and so, from *homem*, a man, they form *homemzarraõ*, a great strong man; from *tolo*, a fool, *toleiraõ*, a great fool, &c. and some others that only may be learned by use. They have also their augmentatives for the feminine; as, *molberona*, a great stout woman; *toleirona*, &c.

There are great many nouns that appear, by their termination, to be augmentatives, though they are not; as, *foraõ*, a ferret; *atafona*, an als or a horse-mill, &c.

### *Of Diminutives.*

The diminutives lessen the signification of their primitives.

The diminutives in the Portuguese language are always formed by changing the last vowel of the primitives into *inho*; but they denote either smallness of things, or kindness and flattery; as, *bicbinho*, a little worm, from *bicho*, a worm; *coitadinho*, from *coitado*, a poor little man; *bonitinho*, a little pretty,  
C
from



from *bonito*, pretty. Sometimes they are formed by adding *zinbo* to the primitives; as *caō-zinbo*, a little dog, from *caō*, a dog; *irmão zinbo*, dear little brother, from *irmão*, &c.

The diminutives that serve for the feminine have their termination in *inha*, or *zinba*; as *maō-zinba*, a little hand, from *maō*, a hand; *cabecinba*, a little head, from *cabeça*, a head. You may see in the last example, that the diminutives serving for the feminine, and ending in *inha*, are formed by changing the last syllable *a* of the primitives into *inka*.

Observe, that many nouns appear to be diminutives without being so; as, *moinbo*, a mill; *espinba*, a fish-bone.

Note, the diminutives in Portuguese sometimes convey a bad meaning, and denote contempt.

### Of Nouns Adjective.

All adjectives ending in *o* make their feminine by changing *o* into *a*; as, *douta*, from *douto*, learned; but *mão*, bad, makes *mã* in the feminine.

Those that end in *ão* have their feminine in *ã*; as, *saã*, from *saō*, healthy; *louçaã*, from *louçãō*, brisk, gay, beautiful; *meaã*, from *meaō*, middling, ordinary.

Those ending in *e* are common to both genders; as, *forte*, strong, &c.

Those that end in *m* make their feminine by adding an *a* to the masculine; as, *luma*, from *lum*, one; *alguma*, from *algum*, some, &c. and sometimes by changing the *m* into *a*; as, *commua*, from *commum*, common; *boa*, from *bom*, good.

Those that end in *u* make their feminine by adding *a* to the masculine, as *nua*, from *nú*, naked; *crua*, from *crú*, raw.

Those that end in *ez* are common to all the genders; as *cortez*, civil, kind; *capaz*, capable, &c. except some which make the feminine, by adding *a* to the



the masculine; as, *Franceza*, from *Francez*, French; *Portugueza*, from *Portuguez*, Portuguese.

*Espanhol*, Spanish, makes *Espanbola* in the feminine; but generally those that end in *l* are common to both genders; as, *affavel*, affable; *cruel*, cruel, &c.

*Of the Comparison of Adjectives.*

The comparison of adjectives is the way of increasing their signification by certain degrees, which are three, viz. the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

The positive lays down the natural signification of the adjective; as, *nobre*, noble; *grande*, great.

The comparative raises it to a higher degree, by comparing it to the positive, which in Portuguese is performed by the adverbs *mais*, more; *menos*, less; as, *mais nobre*, nobler, or more noble; *menos bella*, less handsome.

There are some adjectives which do not admit of *mais* or *menos* before them; as, *celeste*, *nacido*, *comprado*, *desterrado*, &c.

There are four Portuguese comparatives which end in *or*: they may also be expressed by *mais*, more, before their positives; as,

*Mayor*, greater, *mais grande*.

*Menor*, less, *mais pequeno*.

*Peor*, worse, *mais roim*.

*Melhor*, better, *mais bom*.

To which may be added, *superior*, superior; *inferior*, inferior; *deterior*; and some others.

Observe, that there can be no comparison made without the word *than*; and that this word is expressed in Portuguese by *que*. Ex. *Mais claro que o sol*, clearer than the sun; *mais branco que a neve*, more white than the snow. The particle *que* is sometimes preceded by the word *do*. Ex. *Isto he mais do que eu lhe disse*, this is more than I told him;



*he mais prudente do que parece*, he is more wise than it appears.

N. B. The comparatives *superior*, *inferior*, and some others, do not require *que* before the second term, but the dative of the articles, viz. *á*, *ás*, *ao*, *aos*: Examp. *O outro he superior a este*, the other is superior to this

When the Portuguese have a mind to heighten their comparisons, they make use of, *muyta mais*, a great deal, or much more; as also of *muyto menos*, a great deal, or much less. Ex. *Cæsar he muyto mais estimado que Pompeo*, Cæsar is much more esteemed than Pompey; *Pompeo fey muyto menos feliz que Cæsar*, Pompey was much less happy than Cæsar.

### *Of the Superlatives.*

The Portuguese superlative is formed from the noun adjective, by changing the last letter into *issimo* for the masculine, and into *issima* for the feminine: thus, from *bello* is formed *bellissimo* and *bellissima*, most handsome. But sometimes the superlative is formed by adding *muyto*, very, to the positive; as, *muyto alto*, very tall.

Observe, that some superlatives are differently formed; as, *frigidissimo*, from *frio*, cold; *amicissimo*, from *amigo*, friend; *antiquissimo*, from *antigo*, ancient; *capacissimo*, from *capaz*, capable; *nobilissimo*, from *nobre*, noble; *acerrimo*, from *acre*, sharp, or acerb; *riquissimo*, from *rico*, rich; *fertilissimo*, from *fertil*, fruitful; *bonissimo*, from *bom*, good; *fidelissimo*, from *fiel*, faithful; *sacratissimo*, from *sagrado*, sacred, &c.

*The most* is expressed also in Portuguese by *o mais* and *a mais*; as, the most fair, or fairest, *o mais bello*, *a mais bella*. But you must observe, that there are some adjectives which do not admit of *muyto*, very, *o mais*, or *a mais*; as *morto*, *desterrado*, &c.

Observe, that by changing the last letter of the superlatives into *amente*, the superlative adverbs are composed;



composed; as, from *doutissimo*, learned, *doutissima-mente*, most learnedly, &c. But the positive adverbs are formed by adding *mente* to the feminine of the positive; as, *doutamente*, learnedly, from *douta*, the feminine of *douto*; *prudentemente*, prudently, from *prudente*, prudent.

*Of numeral Nouns; and first, of Cardinal.*

The cardinal nouns are such as express the number of things; as,

<i>Hum</i> , one	<i>Vinte e dous</i> , twenty-two
<i>Dous</i> , two	<i>Vinte e tres</i> , &c. twenty-three, &c.
<i>Tres</i> , three	<i>Trinta</i> , thirty
<i>Quatro</i> , four	<i>Quarenta</i> , forty
<i>Cinco</i> , five	<i>Cincoenta</i> , fifty
<i>Seis</i> , six	<i>Sessenta</i> , sixty
<i>Sete</i> , seven	<i>Setenta</i> , seventy
<i>Outo</i> or <i>oito</i> , eight	<i>Oitenta</i> , eighty
<i>Novo</i> , nine	<i>Noventa</i> , ninety
<i>Dez</i> , ten	<i>Cem</i> , a hundred
<i>Onze</i> , eleven	<i>Duzentos</i> , two hundred
<i>Doze</i> , twelve	<i>Trezentos</i> , three hundred
<i>Treze</i> , thirteen	<i>Mil</i> , a thousand
<i>Quatorze</i> , fourteen	<i>Dous mil</i> , two thousand
<i>Quinze</i> , fifteen	<i>Milhaõ</i> , or <i>conto</i> , a million
<i>Dezaseis</i> , sixteen	<i>Huma dezena</i> , half a score
<i>Dezasete</i> , seventeen	<i>Huma Duzia</i> , a dozen
<i>Dezouto</i> , eighteen	<i>Huma Vintena</i> , a score
<i>Dezanove</i> , nineteen	<i>Duas Dezenas</i> , two score
<i>Vinte</i> , twenty	<i>Tres Dezenas</i> , three score.
<i>Vinte e hum</i> , twenty-one	

Observe, that all the cardinals that are adjective nouns, are not declined, being of the common gender, except *hum*, *huma*, one; *dous*, *duas*, two; and those composed of *cento*, a hundred; as, *duzentos*, *duzentas*, two hundred; *quatro centos*, *quatro centas*, four hundred, &c. and when the feminine *huma* is preceded by *á*, and followed by *á outra*, then *huma* signifies *first*, and *á outra*, *secondly*.

The plural, *buns*, *humas*, is taken sometimes instead of *alguns*, *algumas*, signifying *some*; as *buns reys*, some kings; *humas rainhas*, some queens.



N. B. *Cento* loses *to* before a noun, either masculine or feminine, and the *n* is changed into *m*; therefore you must say, *cem soldados*, not *cento soldados*. It only retains *to* and *n* when it is followed by another number, as, *cento e hum*, &c. a hundred and one, &c. and when it is substantive.

N. B. Sometimes *cento* is made a substantive; as *hum cento de castanhas*, one hundred of chestnuts; and so all the cardinal numbers, when preceded by an article, or by another noun of number; as, *o cinco de pács*, the five of clubs; *hum sete*, a seven.

The cardinal number is rendered into English by the ordinal, when it expresses the day of the month, or the date of any act; as, *chegou a quatro de Mayo*, he arrived the fourth day of May.

### Ordinal Nouns.

Ordinal nouns are such as express the order of things; as,

<i>Primeyro</i> , first	<i>Decimo-oitavo</i> , eighteenth
<i>Secundo</i> , second	<i>Decimo-nono</i> , nineteenth
<i>Terceiro</i> , third	<i>Vigésimo</i> , or <i>ventesimo</i> , twentieth
<i>Quarto</i> , fourth	<i>Vigésimo - primeyro</i> , one and twentieth
<i>Quinto</i> , fifth	<i>Trigesimo</i> , thirtieth
<i>Sexto</i> , sixth	<i>Quadragesimo</i> , or <i>quarentesimo</i> , fortieth
<i>Setimo</i> , seventh	<i>Quinquagesimo</i> , fiftieth
<i>Oitavo</i> , eighth	<i>Sexagesimo</i> , sixtieth
<i>Nono</i> , ninth	<i>Septuagesimo</i> , seventieth
<i>Decimo</i> , tenth	<i>Oitagesimo</i> , eightieth
<i>Undecimo</i> , or <i>onzero</i> , eleventh	<i>Nonagesimo</i> , ninetieth
<i>Duodecimo</i> , twelfth	<i>Centesimo</i> , the hundredth
<i>Decimo-tercio</i> , thirteenth	<i>Millesimo</i> , the thousandth
<i>Decimo-quarto</i> , fourteenth	<i>Ultimo</i> , the last.
<i>Decimo-quinto</i> , fifteenth	
<i>Decimo-sexto</i> , sixteenth	
<i>Decimo-setimo</i> , seventeenth	

The proportional numbers are, *simplez duplicado* or *dobrado*, *triplicado* or *triplice* or *tresdobrado*, *quadruplicado* or *quadruplo*, *centuplo*; single, double, threefold, fourfold, a hundredfold.

The



The distributive nouns are, *kum a hum*, one by one; *dous a dous*, two by two.

In English all ordinal numbers may be formed into adverbs; but in Portuguese they have only *primeiramente*, and *secundariamente*, or *segundariamente*, first, secondly; and to express thirdly, fourthly, &c. they say, *em terceiro lugar*, *em quarto lugar*, in the third place, in the fourth place.

*A method (for those who understand French) to learn a great many Portuguese words in a short time.*

We must observe, that the French syllable *cha* is generally expressed in Portuguese by *ca*, rejecting the *b*. Examp. *Charbon*, *charité*, *chastité*, *chœur*, *chapelle*, *chapitre*, &c. the Portuguese say, *carvão*, *caridade*, *castidade*, *capão*, *capella*, *capitulo*, &c. Observe also the following rules.

French words ending in *ance* or *ence*; as, *constance*, *vigilance*, *clemence*, *prudence*, &c. in Portuguese end in *ancia* or *encia*; as, *constancia*, *vigilancia*, *clemencia*, *prudencia*, &c.

*Agne* makes *anha*; *montagne*, *montanha*; *campagne*, *campanha*.

*Ie* makes *ia*; *comédie*, *comedia*. Here you lean the accent upon the *e*, and not upon the *i*, as in French; *poésie*, *poesia*.

*Oire* makes *oria*; *gloire*, *gloria*; *victoire*, *victoria*.

*Ure* makes *ura*; *imposture*, *impostura*; *figure*, *figura*.

*Ison* makes *zão*; *raison*, *razão*; *prison*, *prizaõ*.

*On* makes *aõ*; *charbon*, *carvão*; *baron*, *barão*.

*Ulier* makes *ular*; *regulier*, *regular*; *particulier*, *particular*.

*French Terminations ending in Portuguese in e.*

*Ant*, *ante*; *vigilant*, *vigilante*; *amant*, *amante*.

*Ent*, adjective, *ente*; *prudent*, *prudente*; *diligent*, *diligente*.

*Te* makes *dade*; *pureté*, *puridade*; *liberalité*, *liberalidade*.



*French Terminations ending in Portuguese in vel.*

*Able, vel; louable, louavel; amiable, amavel.*

*French Terminations ending in Portuguese in ez.*

*Ois, names of nations, ez; Francois, Francez; Anglois, Inglez.*

*French Terminations ending in Portuguese in o.*

*Ain and ien, names of nations, ano; Romain, Romano; Italien, Italiano; Napolitain, Napolitano.*

*Aire, ario; salaire, salario; temeraire, temerario.*

*Eau, eo; chapeau, chapeo.*

*Ent, substantive, ento; sacrement, sacramento.*

*Eux, oso; genereux, generoso; gracieux, gracioso.*

*If, ivo; actif, ativo; passif, passivo.*

*C, co; porc, porco; Turc, Turco.*

*French Terminations ending in Portuguese in or.*

*Eur, or; terreur, terror; humeur, humor; chaleur, calor.*

*Change of Terminations of the Verbs and Participles.*

*Er, in the infinitive mood of the first conjugation, makes ar; aimer, amar; chanter, cantar.*

*Ir makes ir, in the infinitive mood; as, partir, partir; sentir, sentir.*

*Oir makes er in the infinitive mood; as, concevoir, conceber.*

*The participles in é make ado; aimé, amado; parlé, fallado.*

*The participles in i make ido; dormi, dormido; menti, mentido.*

*The participles in u make do; as, conçu, concebido; entendu, entendido, &c.*

*There are a great many Portuguese words that have no manner of analogy with the French, which hinder these rules from being general.*



C H A P. III.

*Of the Pronouns.*

**T**HE pronouns are either personal, conjunctive, mixed, possessive, demonstrative, interrogative, relative, or improper.

*Of pronouns personal.*

The pronouns personal are *eu* and *nos* for the first person, and they serve for the masculine and feminine.

*Tu* and *vos* for the second; and these serve also for the masculine and feminine.

*Elle* for the third person of the masculine gender; and it makes *elles* in the plural.

*Ella*, for the third person of the feminine gender, forms in the plural *ellas*.

The pronouns personal are declined by the article indefinite, *de*, *a*, *a*, *da*.

*The Declension of Pronouns personal.*

First Person.

Singular Number.	Plural Number.
Nom. <i>Eu</i> , I	Nom. <i>nós</i> , we
Gen. <i>de mim</i> , of me	Gen. <i>de nós</i> , of us
Dat. <i>á mim</i> , to me	Dat. <i>á nós</i> , to us
Acc. <i>a mim</i> , me	Acc. <i>a nós</i> , us
Abl. <i>de mim</i> , or <i>por mim</i> , from or by me.	Abl. <i>de nós</i> , or <i>por nós</i> , from or by us.

*With me* is rendered by *commigo*; and sometimes they add the pronoun *mesmo* to it; *me* is expressed by *me* in the Portuguese; as, speak to me, *fallai-me*; tell me, *dizei-me*; send me, *mandai-me*; write to me, *escrevei-me*; *elle disse-me*, he told me, &c.

*With us* is rendered in Portuguese by *com nosco*.

*Us*



*Us* is rendered by *nos*. Examp. tell us, *dizei-nos*; give us, *dai-nos*; show us, *mostrai-nos*; *elle disse-nos*, he told us, &c. In these examples *us* is not a pronoun personal, but conjunctive, as you will see hereafter.

### Second Person.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>tu</i> , thou	Nom. <i>vós</i> , ye or you
Gen. <i>de ti</i> , of thee	Gen. <i>de vós</i> , of you
Dat. <i>a ti</i> , or <i>te</i> , to thee	Dat. <i>à vós</i> , or <i>vos</i> , to you
Acc. <i>a ti</i> , or <i>te</i> , thee	Acc. <i>á vós</i> , or <i>vos</i> , you
Abl. <i>de ti</i> , or <i>por ti</i> , from or by thee	Abl. <i>de vós</i> , ou <i>por vos</i> , from or by you.

*With thee* is rendered by *contigo*; and sometimes they add to it the pronoun *mesmo*. *You*, or *yourself*, after imperatives, are rendered by *vos*, and not *vós*; as, be you contented, *contentai-vos*; show yourself, *mostrai-vos*; hide yourself, *escondei-vos*.

*Thee*, or *thyself*, are expressed after imperatives by *te*; as, *móstrate*, show thyself.

*With you* is rendered in Portuguese by *com vosco*.

### Third Person. For the Masculine.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>elle</i> , he or it	Nom. <i>elles</i> , they
Gen. <i>delle</i> , of him or of it	Gen. <i>delles</i> , of them
Dat. <i>a elle</i> , to him or to it	Dat. <i>a elles</i> , to them
Acc. <i>a elle</i> , him or it	Acc. <i>a elles</i> , them
Abl. <i>delle</i> ou <i>por elle</i> , from or by him or it.	Abl. <i>delles</i> or <i>por elles</i> , from or by them

The Portuguese have no particular pronoun, as our *it*, for things that are inanimate.

Remember that the pronoun *him*, or *to him*, when joined to a verb, is always rendered in Portuguese, by *lhe*, and *them*, or *to them*, by *lhes*.

*With him* is rendered in Portuguese sometimes by *com elle*, and sometimes by *comfigo*, to which they add the pronoun *mesmo*.



Third Person. Feminine.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>ella</i> , she or it	Nom. <i>ellas</i> , they
Gen. <i>della</i> , of her or of it	Gen. <i>dellas</i> , of them
Dat. <i>a ella</i> , to her or to it	Dat. <i>a ellas</i> , to them
Acc. <i>a ella</i> , her or it	Acc. <i>a ellas</i> , them
Abl. <i>della</i> , or <i>por ella</i> , from or by her or it.	Abl. <i>dellas</i> or <i>por ellas</i> , from or by them.

Remember that the pronoun *her* or *to her*, when joined to a verb, is always rendered in Portuguese by *lhe*; and *them*, or *to them*, by *lhes*; as you will see in the pronouns conjunctive.

*With her* is rendered in Portuguese by *com ella* or *comfigo*.

*Of the Pronoun si, himself, or one's self.*

There is another pronoun personal that serves indifferently for the masculine and feminine: this is *si*, one's self. It has no nominative.

Gen. <i>de si</i> , of one's self, himself, or herself.
Dat. <i>a si</i> , to one's self, &c.
Acc. <i>a si</i> one's self, &c.
Abl. <i>de si</i> or <i>por si</i> , from or by one's self, &c.

It is often joined with the pronoun *mesmo* or *mesma*; as, *de or por si mesmo*, by himself; *por si mesma*, or *de si mesma*, by herself; *o homem não ama senão a si mesmo*, man loves himself only; *quem não se bem senão para si, não se bem que viva*, who minds no body but himself only, don't deserve to live; *o vicio se abomina de si mesmo*, vice is hateful of itself; *a terra de si, or de si mesma se fertil*, the earth is fruitful of itself.

Observe, that they join also the pronoun *mesmo* to pronouns personal, as the French do with their pronoun *même*, viz.



<i>Eu mesmo</i> , myself	<i>nós mesmos</i> , ourselves
<i>Tu mesmo</i> , thyself	<i>vós mesmos</i> , yourselves
<i>Elle mesmo</i> , himself	<i>elles mesmos</i> , }
<i>Elle mesma</i> , herself	<i>ellas mesmas</i> , } themselves
• <i>homem mesmo</i> , man himself;	<i>a mesma virtude</i> , virtue itself.

1st. Observe, that *mesmo* with the article is also an adjective, signifying *the same*; thus, *o mesmo*, *a mesma*, *os mesmos*, the same, relating to some nouns expressed or understood.

2dly, Note, That they join also the adjective *outro*, other, to the plural of the pronouns personal, *I* and *thou*; so they say, *nos outros*, we; *vos outros*, you.

3dly, *Comsigo* may be rendered in English (as we have said above) by *with him* and *with her*; but you must observe, that it may be rendered also by *with them* in the plural; and sometimes by *about him*, *about her*, or *about them*. Exam. *Elle*, or *ella*, *nunca traz dinheiro comsigo*, he, or she never has money about him, or about her.

### Of Pronouns conjunctive.

The pronouns conjunctive are so called, because they always come immediately before or after the verb.

The pronouns conjunctive bear a great resemblance to the pronouns personal: the pronouns personal are,

*Eu*, I; *tu*, thou; *elle*, he; *nos*, we; *vos*, ye; *elles*, they.

There are seven pronouns conjunctive, viz. *me*, to me, or me; *te*, to thee, or thee; *se*, to himself, or himself, to herself, or herself; *lhe*, to him, or him, to her, or her; *nos*, to us, or us; *vos*, to you, or, you; *lhes*, to them, or them.

### EXAMPLE.

*Isto me agrada*, this pleases me; *he-me necessario*, I want.

*Deos te ve*, God sees thee.

*Ella se louva*, she praises herself.



*Eu lhe direi*, I will tell him, or I will tell her.

*Eu lhes prometti*, I promised them: as well for the masculine as the feminine.

The pronoun conjunctive, *lhe*, is always put after the verb, when it is in the imperative mood; as, *dizei-lhe*, tell him; *cortai-lhe as azas*, cut his wings; but when the verb is in some other mood, it may be put either before or after it; as, *elle lhe cortou*, or *elle cortou-lhe a cabeça*, he has cut off his head. The same observation takes place in the other pronouns conjunctive.

The pronoun conjunctive, *se*, is sometimes followed by *me*, *lhe*, &c. as, *offerece-se-me*, it is offered to me; *representou-se-lhe*, it was represented to him, &c.

1st, Note, that the pronouns conjunctive are very often joined to a verb, preceded or followed by the verb *barver*. Examp. *Dar lhe bei tanta pancada*, or, *en lhe bei de dar tanta pancada, que*, &c. I will cudgel him so much, that, &c.

2dly, *Lhe* is sometimes rendered in English by *you*. Examp. *Que lhe parece aquillo?* What do you think of that? *assente no que lhe digo*, be persuaded, or believe what I tell you.

### *Of Pronouns mixed.*

There are some pronouns in Portuguese which are composed of the pronouns personal and conjunctive, and which therefore are called mixed.

To clear up this matter, you must express them as underneath, changing the letter *e* of the pronoun conjunctive into *o* for the masculine, and into *a* for the feminine; as, to say *to me of it*, instead of *me o*, or *me a*, you must say, *mo* or *ma*. In the like manner, instead of *lhe o* or *lhe a*, you must say, *lho* or *lha*, &c. as you may observe in the following pronouns mixed.

*me,*



<i>me</i> , m.	{ me of it, or it or him to me	<i>to</i>	{ thee of it or it or him to thee
<i>ma</i> , f.	{ me of it, or it or her to me	<i>ta</i>	{ thee of it or it or her to thee
<i>ms</i> , m.	{ me of them or	<i>tos</i> , m.	{ thee of them or
<i>mas</i> , f.	{ them to me	<i>tas</i> , f.	{ them to thee
<i>selo</i> , m.	{ it to himself; to herself, or to themselves		
<i>sela</i> , f.	{ it to herself, to himself, or to themselves.		
<i>selos</i> , m.	{ them to himself, to herself, or to themselves		
<i>selas</i> , f.	{ them to herself, to himself, or to themselves		
<i>lho</i> , m.	{ to him, or to her of it or it to him, or to her		
<i>lha</i> , f.	{ to him, or to her of it or it to him, or to her.		
<i>lhos</i> , m.	{ to them of it, to him of them, or to her of them		
<i>lhas</i> , f.	{ to them of it, to him of them, or to her of them		
<i>nolo</i> , m.	{ us of it, or it to us		
<i>nola</i> , f.	{ us of it, or it to us		
<i>nolos</i> , m. p.	{ them to us		
<i>nolas</i> , f. p.	{ them to us		
<i>volô</i> , m.	{ you of it, or it to you		
<i>vola</i> , f.	{ you of it, or it to you		
<i>volos</i> , m. p.	{ you of them, or them to you		
<i>valas</i> , f. p.	{ you of them, or them to you		

Here you have some Examples.

*Para dar-lho*, to give it to him or to her.

*Dai-mo*, give it me.

*Eu-to darei*, I'll give it you.

*Entrego-to*, I deliver it to you.

*Dize-lho*, you tell it him or her.

*Entrega-lhos*, deliver them to him, or to her.

*Lá selo haja*, let that to himself.

*Elle nolo disse*, he told us of it.

*Eu volos mandarei*, I'll send them to you.

If the verbs are in the infinitive, the pronouns mixed may be put either before or after the verbs; as, *para dizermo*, or *para mo dizer*, to tell me it: but if the verbs are in the gerund, the pronouns mixed



mixed must be transposed; as, *dizendomo*, and not *mo dizendo*, in telling me it.

You must make use of these pronouns, both masculine and feminine, according to the gender of the thing that is said, sent, delivered, &c. and not of the person to whom the thing is said, sent, given, &c.

*Of the Pronouns possessive.*

Pronouns possessive, so called, because they shew that the thing spoken of belongs to the person or thing which they serve to denote, are of two sorts, absolute and relative. See the remarks hereafter.

The English have no article in the nominative before the pronouns possessive; but the Portuguese have, as, *my*, *o meu*, *a minha*, fem. Plur. *os meus*, *as minhas*, fem.

The pronouns possessive in Portuguese are the following:

Sing. <i>meu</i> m. <i>minha</i> , f.	} my
Plur. <i>meus</i> , m. <i>minhas</i> , f.	
Sing. <i>teu</i> , m. <i>tua</i> , f.	} thy
Plur. <i>teus</i> , m. <i>tuas</i> , f.	
Sing. <i>seu</i> , m.	} his, or its
Plur. <i>seus</i> , m.	
Sing. <i>sua</i> , f.	} her or its
Plur. <i>suas</i> , f.	
Sing. <i>nosso</i> , m. <i>nossa</i> , f.	} our
Plur. <i>nossos</i> , m. <i>nossas</i> , f.	
Sing. <i>vosso</i> , m. <i>vossa</i> , f.	} your
Plur. <i>vossos</i> , m. <i>vossas</i> , f.	

The pronouns possessive are declined by the definite article *o* for the masculine, and by *a* for the feminine.

EXAMPLE.

Singular.

Nom. *o meu livro*, my book

Gen. *do meu livro*, of my book

Dat. *ao meu livro*, to my book

Acc. *meu livro*, my book

Abl. *de ou pello meu livro*, from or by my book.

Plural



## Plural.

Nom. *os meu livros*, my books

Gen. *dos meus livros*, of my books

Dat. *aos meus livros*, to my books

Acc. *os meus livros*, my books

Abl. *dos ou pelos meus livros*, from or by my books.

Decline all the other masculines after the same manner, and their feminines by the article *a* ; as, my house, *a minha casa* ; of my house, *da minha casa*, &c.

Note, you must not use the definite article when the pronouns possessive precede nouns of quality, as well as those of kindred, but the indefinite article *de*, *a*, &c.

## EXAMPLE.

*Vossa magestade*, your majesty.

*De vossa magestade*, of your majesty, &c.

*Meu pay*, my father.

*De meu pay*, of my father, &c.

From the above examples it appears that nouns declined by the indefinite article have no article in the nominative.

Though the definite article sometimes is used before nouns of kindred, yet we ought not to use it, according to the old proverb: *tu vivendo bonos, scribendo sequare peritos*.

*Seu* is made use of sometimes in room of *vosso* and *vossa*, in the polite way of speaking: so they say, *tenho o seu livro*, I have your book; *fallei ao seu criado*, I spoke to your servant; *os seus olhos são formosos*, your eyes are handsome.

*Remarks upon the Possessives.*

The pronouns possessive absolute always come before the noun which they belong to. We have expressed them above.

Pronouns



Pronouns possessive relative are so called because they not being joined to their substantive, suppose it either expressed before, or understood, and are related to it. They are the following :

	Masc.	Fem.	
Sing. <i>Meu,</i>	<i>minha,</i>	} mine.	
Plur. <i>Meus,</i>	<i>minhas,</i>		
Sing. <i>Teu,</i>	<i>tua,</i>	} thine.	
Plur. <i>Teus,</i>	<i>tuas,</i>		
Sing. <i>Seu,</i> his,	<i>sua,</i>		hers.
Plur. <i>Seus,</i>	<i>suas,</i>		theirs.
Sing. <i>Nosso,</i>	<i>nossa,</i>	} ours.	
Plur. <i>Nossos,</i>	<i>nossas,</i>		
Sing. <i>Vosso,</i>	<i>vossa,</i>	} yours.	
Plur. <i>Vossos,</i>	<i>vossas,</i>		

To express in Portuguese *it is mine, it is thine, &c.* we must say *he meu, he teu, &c.*

The pronouns possessive absolute do not agree, in Portuguese, in gender with the noun of the possessor, as in English, but with that of the thing possessed ; as, *a mãe ama a seu filho*, the mother loves her son ; *o pai ama a sua filha*, the father loves his daughter. So you see that the pronoun masculine *seu*, in Portuguese, is sometimes rendered by *her* in English, and the feminine *sua* by *his*.

The same observation is to be made upon the possessives relative, according to the gender of the noun that is understood ; therefore they say of a hat (for instance) belonging to a lady, *he o seu*, it is hers ; because the noun understood, viz. *chapeo*, hat, is of the masculine gender.

We have already said, that *seu* and *sua* are sometimes rendered in English by *your*, when they are absolute ; but you must also observe, that they are sometimes rendered in English by *yours*, when they are pronouns relative, and that in the polite way of speaking ; and so they say, speaking of any thing belonging to a gentleman or lady, *he o seu*, or



*be a sua*, it is yours ; but if the gentleman or lady are not present, or if they do not speak directly to them, though present, then the pronouns *seu* and *sua* must be rendered into English by *his* or *hers*.

Note, That the pronouns possessive absolute, in Portuguese, agree also in number with the noun of the thing possessed ; hence it is that they say *a sua historia*, its history, speaking of a kingdom, province, &c. or, *his history*, speaking of any history composed by a man ; or, *her history*, speaking of that written by a woman ; or, *their history*, speaking of that written by several hands, or of several people. And from this example you may learn, that the Portuguese have no particular pronoun possessive for things that are inanimate, as we have the pronoun *its*. Hence at last it follows, that when the Portuguese possessives *seu* and *sua* are relative, they are rendered into English by *his* or *hers*, or *theirs*, according to the gender and number of the noun of the possessor that is understood.

You must also observe, that they sometimes add the third pronoun personal, *delle*, of him, *delles*, of them, *della*, of her, *dellas*, of them ; to denote more plainly whose thing it is they speak of ; as, *o seu livro delles*, their book ; *as suas palavras della*, her words, &c.

Note, That the possessives absolute are left out when they are preceded by a verb, or by a pronoun conjunctive, which sufficiently denote whose thing it is they speak of ; the Portuguese being then contented with the article : as *devo-lhe a vida*, I owe my life to him, or to it ; *doe-me a barriga*, my belly akes.

When the pronouns possessive absolute are before nouns of different genders in the same sentence, and with which they are grammatically construed, they ought to be repeated ; as *seu pay e sua may*, his father and mother ; not *seu pay e may*.

Moreover,



Moreover, the Portuguese use the pronoun possessive absolute in the following case; when we use the possessive relative; a friend of mine, *hum dos meus amigos*.

The possessives *minha, tua, sua, nossa, vossa*, may be also relative, but with a different meaning. Examples: *Levarei a minha avante*, I will insist upon it, I will obtain it; *elle levará a sua avante*, he will insist upon it, he will do it; *levai a vossa avante*, go on with your resolution; *fazer das suas*, to play tricks, to dodge.

*Os meu, os seus, &c.* signify, my relations, or my friends, thy relations, or thy friends; as *os seus não o querem*, his parents or relations do not like him; *deixa-o hir com os seus*, let him go with his people, his countrymen, &c.

Take notice, that when the pronoun possessive is accompanied by a pronoun demonstrative, they do not put the article in the nominative: they do not say, *o este meu livro*, but *este meu livro*, this book of mine. But in all other cases they make use of the indefinite article; as *d'este* or *deste vosso livro*, &c.

### *Of the Pronouns demonstrative.*

They are called pronouns demonstrative, because they serve to point out or demonstrate any thing or person; as, this book, *este livro*; that man, *aquelle homem*.

There are three principal demonstratives in Portuguese, viz. *este*, this; *esse*, that; *aquelle*, that; but observe, that *este* shews the thing or person that is just near or by us; *esse* shews the thing that is a little farther, or near the person; and *aquelle* shews what is very distant from the person who speaks, or is spoken of, and is expressed in English by *that there*, or *yonder*. You must also observe, that *esse, essa*, is used in writing to any person to express the place or town wherein he dwells; as *tenho fallado nessa cidade*



*com muitos amigos*, I have spoken in your city with many friends.

These pronouns are declined thus :

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Singular	Nom.	<i>este</i> ,	<i>esta</i> ,	<i>isto</i> , this.
	Gen.	<i>deste</i> ,	<i>desta</i> ,	<i>disto</i> , of this.
	Dat.	<i>á este</i> ,	<i>á esta</i> ,	<i>á isto</i> , to this
	Acc.	<i>este</i> ,	<i>esta</i> ,	<i>isto</i> , this.
	Abl.	<i>deste</i> ,	<i>desta</i> ,	<i>disto</i> , from this.

No Neut.

Plural	Nom.	<i>estes</i> ,	<i>estas</i> ,	these.
	Gen.	<i>destes</i> ,	<i>destas</i> ,	of these.
	Dat.	<i>á estes</i> ,	<i>á estas</i> ,	to these.
	Acc.	<i>estes</i> ,	<i>estas</i> ,	these.
	Abl.	<i>destes</i> ,	<i>destas</i> ,	from these.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Singular	Nom.	<i>esse</i> ,	<i>essa</i> ,	<i>isso</i> , that or it.
	Gen.	<i>desse</i> ,	<i>dessa</i> ,	<i>disso</i> , of that, &c.
	Dat.	<i>á esse</i> ,	<i>á essa</i> ,	<i>á isso</i> , to that.
	Acc.	<i>esse</i> ,	<i>essa</i> ,	<i>isso</i> , that.
	Abl.	<i>desse</i> ,	<i>dessa</i> ,	<i>disso</i> , from that.

No Neut.

Plural	Nom.	<i>esses</i> ,	<i>essas</i> ,	those.
	Gen.	<i>desses</i> ,	<i>dessas</i> ,	of those.
	Dat.	<i>á esses</i> ,	<i>á essas</i> ,	to those.
	Acc.	<i>esses</i> ,	<i>essas</i> ,	those.
	Abl.	<i>desses</i> ,	<i>dessas</i> ,	from those.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Singular	Nom.	<i>aquelle</i> ,	<i>aquella</i> ,	<i>aquillo</i> , that.
	Gen.	<i>daquelle</i> ,	<i>daquella</i> ,	<i>daquillo</i> , of that.
	Dat.	<i>áquelle</i> ,	<i>áquella</i> ,	<i>áquillo</i> , to that.
	Acc.	<i>aquelle</i> ,	<i>aquella</i> ,	<i>aquillo</i> , that.
	Abl.	<i>daquelle</i> ,	<i>daquella</i> ,	<i>daquillo</i> , from that.

No Neut.

Plural	Nom.	<i>aquelles</i> ,	<i>aquellas</i> ,	those.
	Gen.	<i>daquelles</i> ,	<i>daquellas</i> ,	of those.
	Dat.	<i>áquelles</i> ,	<i>áquellas</i> ,	to those.
	Acc.	<i>aquelles</i> ,	<i>aqueilas</i> ,	those.
	Abl.	<i>daquelles</i> ,	<i>daquellas</i> ,	from those.

You



You must observe, that there is an elision of the vowel of the indefinite article in the genitive and ablative of the pronouns *este* and *esse*, both in the singular and plural; and that they write and pronounce *deste*, *destas*, &c. instead of *de este*, *de estas*; and so in the neuter they write *disso*, *disto*, instead of *de isso*, *de isto*. The same observation you must make upon the pronoun *aquelle*, wherein you will see another elision besides, in the dative case.

Note, That both the Portuguese and Spaniards have demonstratives of the neuter gender; though they do not agree with the substantives as in Latin, because they do not say *isto homem*, but *este homem*, this man. But the word *cousa*, thing, is always understood, though the neuter demonstrative does not agree with it; so that it is the same thing to say *isto* or *esta cousa*, this thing; *isso* or *essa cousa*, that thing, &c. Example, *isso he* or *esse he a cousa de que nos estamos fallando*, that is the thing we are speaking of; *aquillo he* or *aquella he a cousa que vos deveis fazer*, that is the thing you must do, &c.

When the preposition *em*, in, comes before the pronouns demonstratives, they make an elision of the vowel of it, and change the consonant *m* into *n*; and so, instead of writing and pronouncing *em este*, *em esta*, *em isto*, *em isso*, *em aquillo*, they write and pronounce *neste*, *nesta*, *nisto*, *nisso*, &c. in this, in that, &c.

The words *outro*, *outra*, are often joined to the pronouns demonstrative, taking off the last *e*; as *estóutro*, *essóutro*, *aquellóutro*. Example; *Estóutro homem*, this other man; *estóutra mulher*, this other woman; *essóutro homem*, that other man.

They also join very often the pronoun *mesmo*, the same, to the demonstratives; as *este mesmo homem*, this very same man; *aquillo mesmo*, that very same thing.

*Aqui*, *alí*, and *lá*, are sometimes added to the demonstrative, or to the noun that comes after it, in order



der to specify and particularize it still more; as *este homem aqui*, this man; *aquella molher lá*, that woman: *aqui* denoting a near, or present object; and *lá*, a distant and absent one.

The pronouns *aquelle*, *aquella*, *aquelles*, *aquellas*, when they relate to persons, and are followed by the relative *que*, are rendered into English by *he who* or *he that*, *she who* or *that*, *they who* or *that*; as *aquelle que ama a virtude he feliz*, he who loves virtue is happy; *aquelles que desprezaõ a ciencia não conhecem o valor della*, they who despise learning know not the value of it. You must observe, that when *aquelle*, *aquella*, &c. are preceded by *este*, *esta*, &c. then *este* signifies the last thing or person spoken of, and *aquelle*, &c. the first; as *Carlos foi grande, Frederico ambicioso, este valente, aquella poderoso*, Charles was great, Frederic ambitious, the first powerful, the last courageous.

The pronoun possessive absolute *his*, *her* *their*, construed in English with a noun followed by the pronoun relative *who* or *that* before a verb, is made into Portuguese by the negative of the pronouns *aquelle*, *aquella*, *aquelles*, followed by *que*, and the possessive is left out; as, all men blame his manners who often says that which himself does not think, *tudo o mundo censura o procedimento daquelle que tem por costume dizer o que não tem no pensamento*; Providence does not prosper their labours that slight their best friends, *a Providencia não abençoa o trabalho daquelles que desprezaõ os seus melhores amigos*.

The English pronoun *such* followed by *as* or *that*, (but not governed of the verb substantive *to be*), is also rendered into Portuguese by *aquelles que*, or *aquelles taes que*, or *aquelle que*; as, such as do not love virtue do not know it, *aquellas or aquelles taes que não amaõ a virtude, não a conhecem*.

The pronouns *isso*, *isto*, *aquillo*, before *que*, are Englished by *what*; as *elle diz aquillo que sabe*, he says what he knows.

*Aquelle*



*Aquelle* is also used to shew contempt; as *que quer aquelle homem?* what does that man desire?

*Of the Pronouns interrogative.*

The pronouns interrogative serve to ask questions, and are as follow; as, who, what, which, *quem, que, qual.*

E X A M P L E.

*Quem he?* who is it?

*Quem vos disse isso?* who told you so?

*Que quereis?* what will you have?

*Com que se sustenta?* what does he maintain himself with?

*Que estais fazendo?* what are you doing?

*De que se faz isto?* from what is this done?

*Que livro he este?* what book is this?

*Que negocios tendes?* what affairs have you?

*Que casa he?* what house is it?

*De qual fallaes vós?* which do you speak of?

*Qual delles?* which of them?

*Quem or qual dos dois?* which or whether of the two?

These pronouns are thus declined.

Singular and Plural. Masculine and Feminine.	Singular and Plural. Masculine and Feminine.
Nom. <i>quem</i> , who.	Nom. <i>que</i> , what.
Gen. <i>de quem</i> , of whom.	Gen. <i>de que</i> , of what.
Dat. <i>a quem</i> , to whom.	Dat. <i>a que</i> , to what.
Acc. <i>quem</i> , whom.	Acc. <i>que</i> , what.
Abl. <i>de quem</i> , from whom.	Abl. <i>de que</i> , from what.

*Qual* is spoken both of the person and of the thing, and is declined thus:

Singular. Masculine and Feminine.
Nom. <i>qual</i> , which or what.
Gen. <i>de qual</i> , of which or what.
Dat. <i>a qual</i> , to which or what.
Acc. <i>qual</i> , which or what.
Abl. <i>a qua</i> , from which or what.



Plural. Masculine and Feminine.

Nom. *quaes*, which or what.

Gen. *de quaes*, of which or what.

Dat. *a quaes*, to which or what.

Acc. *quaes*, which or what.

Abl. *de quaes*, from which or what.

Observe, that when the word *quer* is added to *quem* or *qual*, it quite alters the meaning; *quemquer* signifying whoever, or any person, and *qualquer* any one, whether man, woman, or thing; and sometimes they add the particle *que* to them, as *quemquer que*, &c.

### *Of the Pronouns relative.*

Pronouns relative are those which shew the relation, or reference, which a noun has to what follows it. They are in Portuguese the following: *qual*, which; *que*, that or which; *cujos*, whose; *quem*, who.

*Qual*, in a sense of comparison, is followed by *tal*, and then *qual* is Englished by *as*, and *tal* by *so*.

N. B. When *qual* is only a relative, it is declined with the definite articles *o* or *a*.

The pronoun *que* may be relative both to persons and things, and is common to all numbers, genders, and cases; as, *o livro que*, the book which; *os livros que*, the books which; *a carta que*, the letter which; *as cartas que*, the letters which; *o mestre que ensina*, the master who teacheth; *a mulher que tenho*, the wife that I have; *o homem que eu amo*, the man whom I love: and it is declined thus.

### Singular and Plural.

Nom. *que*, which or who.

Gen. *de que*, of which or of whom.

Dat. *a que*, to which or to whom.

Acc. *que*, which or whom.

Abl. *de que*, from which or from whom.

*Que*



*Que* is sometimes a conjunction; as *creyo que birei*, I believe that I shall go. See the Syntax.

The relative *quem*, who, is only relative to persons; but in the nominative case of the singular is rendered into English by *he who*, or *who*; as, *quem falla deve considerar*, &c. he who speaks ought to consider, &c. *eu não sei quem*, I know not who.

Observe, that *quem* is common to all numbers, genders, and cases; but it has no nominative in the plural.

*Quem* is declined thus :

Singular and Plural.

Nom. *quem*, he who, or she who, or whoever

Gen. *de quem*, of whom

Dat. *a quem*, to whom

Acc. *quem*, whom

Abl. *de quem*, from whom.

*Quem* is sometimes a particle disjunctive, and then it signifies *some*; as, *quem canta, e quem ri*, some sing, and some laugh; and sometimes it serves for exclamation; as, *quem me dera estar em casa!* how fain would I be at home!

*Cujo, cuja*, is declined thus :

Masc. Fem.

Sing.	{	Nom.	<i>cujo,</i>	<i>cuja,</i>	whose
		Gen.	<i>de cujo,</i>	<i>de cuja,</i>	of whose
		Dat.	<i>a cujo,</i>	<i>a cuja,</i>	to whose
		Acc.	<i>cujo,</i>	<i>cuja,</i>	whose
		Abl.	<i>de cujo,</i>	<i>de cuja,</i>	from whose

The plural is formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, *cujos, cujas*, whose, &c.

Note, that *cujo* must be followed by the noun or term which it refers to, and with which it agrees in gender, number, and case; as, *a pessoa cuja reputação vos admira*, the person whose reputation you wonder at; *o céu cujo soccorro nunca falta*, heaven, whose assistance never fails; *cuja bella cara*, whose fair visage; *cujas bellezas*, whose beauties; *a cujo*  
pay,



*pay*, to whose father; *de cujos irmãos tenho recebido*, from whose brothers I have received. Observe also that *cujo* is not to be repeated, though the terms which it refers to be of different numbers; as, *cuja valia e obras*, whose value and deeds.

Note, that *o, a, os, as, lo, la, &c.* are also pronouns relative, when joined to verbs. See the Syntax, chap. iv.

*Of the improper Pronouns.*

These pronouns are called *improper*, because indeed they are not properly pronouns, but have a great resemblance with pronouns, as well as with adjectives. They are the following :

*Hum*, one

*Alguem*, somebody

*Algum*, some

*Ninguem*, nobody

*Nenhum*, none

*Cadabum*, every one, each

*Cada*, every

*Outro, outra*, other

*Outrem*, another

*Qualquer*, any one; whether man, or woman, or thing

*Qualquer dos dous*, either of the two, or whosoever of the two

*Quemquer*, whoever, or any person

*Todo*, all, or every

*Tal*, such, &c.

*Hum* has two terminations, viz. *hum, huma*; and in the plural it makes *huns* and *lumas*. It is declinable with the indefinite article.

*Alguem* has only one termination, and it is only declinable in the singular with the indefinite article.

*Algum* has two terminations, viz. *algum, alguma*; and in the plural, *alguns, algumas*. It is declinable with the indefinite article.

*Ninguem* has only one termination, and is only declinable in the singular with the indefinite article: *ninguem o cré*, no body believes it.

*Nenhum*



*Nenbum* has two terminations. viz. *nenbum*, *nenbuma*, and in the plural *nenbuns*, *nenbumas*; and is only declinable with the indefinite article: *nenbum homem*, no man; *de nenbum effeito*, of none effect.

*Cadabum* has two terminations, viz. *cadabum*, *cadabuma*; but it has no plural, and is only declinable with the indefinite article.

*Cada* has but one termination. It has no plural, and is only declinable with the indefinite article: *cada dia*, every day; *cada mez*, every month.

*Outro* has two terminations, viz. *outro*, *outra*; and in the plural, *outros*, *outras*. It is declinable both with the definite and indefinite articles.

*Outrem* has only one termination. It has no plural, and is only declinable with the indefinite article.

*Qualquer* has only one termination. It makes *quaſquer* in the plural, and is only declined with the indefinite article. *Qualquer* is ſpoken both of the perſon and of the thing.

*Quemquer* has but one termination. It has no plural, and is only declinable with the indefinite article. It is rendered in English by *any body*: *quemquer vos dira*, any body will tell you. *Quemquer* is always ſpoken of a perſon.

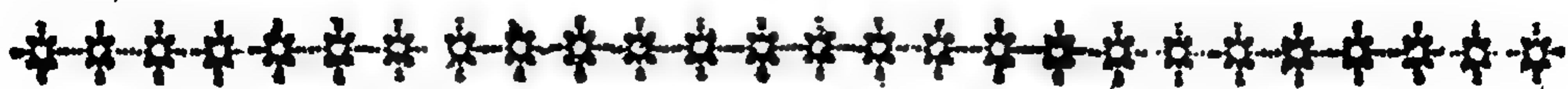
*Todo* has two terminations, viz. *tudo*, *toda*; and in the plural, *todos*, *todas*. It is declinable with the indefinite article. It is ſometimes taken ſubſtantively, and then it ſignifies *the whole*; as, *o todo he mayor que a ſua parte*, the whole is bigger than its part.

*Tal* has only one termination. It makes *tacs* in the plural, and it is declined with the indefinite article. It is common to the masculine and to the feminine genders; and ſometimes it is joined to *qual*; as, *tal qual elle he*, ſuch as it is.

*Tal*



*Tal* supplies sometimes the place of the person whose name is not specified ; as, *bum tal velhaco deve ser castigado*, such a rogue ought to be punished.



## C H A P. IV.

### *Of Verbs.*

**T**HE verb is a part of speech which serves to express that which is attributed to the subject in denoting the *being* or *condition* of the things and persons spoken of, the *actions* which they do, or the *impressions* they receive.

The first and the most general division of Verbs is to divide them into personal and impersonal.

A verb personal is conjugated by three persons.

### E X A M P L E.

Sing.	<i>eu amo,</i>	I love
	<i>tu amas,</i>	thou lovest
	<i>elle ama</i>	he loves
Plur.	<i>nos amamos,</i>	we love
	<i>vos amais,</i>	ye love
	<i>elles amaõ,</i>	they love.

A verb impersonal is conjugated by the third person of the singular number only ; as, *chove*, it rains ; *convem*, it behoves.

A verb, considered in regard to the syntax, is of four sorts, viz. active, passive, neuter, and reciprocal.

Some of the verbs are regular, and others irregular.

Some are also called auxiliary verbs. We shall give their definitions in their proper places.

Before



Before you begin to learn the conjugations, it will be proper to observe, that all the verbs may be conjugated with the pronouns personal, *eu, tu, elle,* &c. or without them.

*Of the auxiliary Verbs.*

The auxiliary verbs are so called, because they help to the conjugation of other verbs. They are four in Portuguese, viz. *haver, ter, to have; ser, estar, to be.* The auxiliary verb *ser, to be,* is also called the verb substantive, because it affirms what the subject is, and is always followed by a noun that particularizes what that subject is; as, *ser rico, prudente, douto, &c.* to be rich, wise, learned, &c.

*The Conjugation of the auxiliary Verb ter or haver, to have.*

The Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing.	{	<i>eu tenho, ou hey</i>	I have
		<i>tu tens, ou has</i>	thou hast
		<i>elle tem, ou ha</i>	he has or hath
Plur.	{	<i>nos temos, ou havemos, ou hemos</i>	we have
		<i>vos tendes, ou haveis, ou leis</i>	you have
		<i>elles tem, ou hão</i>	they have.

Preterimperfect.

Sing.	{	<i>eu tinha, ou havia, ou lia</i>	I had
		<i>tu tinhas, ou havias, ou lias</i>	thou hadst
		<i>elle tinha, ou havia, ou lia</i>	he had
Plur.	{	<i>nos tinhamos, ou haviamos, ou liamos</i>	we had
		<i>vos tinheis, ou haviaes, ou lieis</i>	you had
		<i>elles tinhaõ, ou haviaõ, ou liaõ</i>	they had

Preterperfect definite.

Sing.	{	<i>eu tive, ou houve</i>	I had
		<i>tu tiveste, ou houveste</i>	thou hadst
		<i>elle teve, ou houve</i>	he had
Plur.	{	<i>nos tivemos, ou houvemos</i>	we had
		<i>vos tivestes, ou houvestes</i>	you had
		<i>elles tiveraõ, ou houveraõ</i>	they had

Preter-



## Preterperfect.

Sing.	<i>eu tenho tido</i>	I have had
	<i>tu tens tido</i>	thou hast had
	<i>elle tem tido</i>	he has had
Plur.	<i>nos temos tido</i>	we have had
	<i>vos tendes tido</i>	you have had
	<i>elles tem tido</i>	they have had

## Preterpluperfect.

Sing.	<i>eu tinha tido</i>	I had had
	<i>tu tinhas tido</i>	thou hadst had
	<i>elle tinha tido</i>	he had had
Plur.	<i>nas tínhamos tido</i>	we had had
	<i>vos tinheis tido</i>	you had had
	<i>elles tinhaõ tido</i>	they had had.

This tense may also be conjugated thus; *tivera, tiveras, tivera, tiveramos, tivereis, tiveraõ*.

## First Future.

Sing.	<i>eu terey, ou haverey</i>	I shall or will have
	<i>tu terás, ou haverás</i>	thou shalt or will have
	<i>elle terá, ou haverá,</i>	he shall or will have
Plur.	<i>nos teremos, ou haveremos</i>	we shall or will have
	<i>vos tereis, ou haveréis</i>	ye shall or will have
	<i>elles teraõ, ou haveraõ</i>	they shall or will have.

## Second Future.

Sing.	<i>eu hey de ter, ou haver, &amp;c.</i>	I must have, &c.
-------	---	------------------

## Third Future.

Sing.	<i>eu haverey de ter, ou haver, &amp;c.</i>	I shall be obliged to have, &c.
-------	---	---------------------------------

## Fourth Future.

Sing.	<i>eu havia de ter, ou haver, &amp;c.</i>	I was to have, &c.
-------	---	--------------------

## Imperative.

Sing.	<i>tem tu</i>	have thou
	<i>tenha elle, ou hája elle</i>	let him have
Plur.	<i>tenhâmos, ou hajâmos nos</i>	let us have
	<i>tende, ou havey vos</i>	have ye
	<i>tenhaõ, ou hajaõ elles</i>	let them have

The



. The imperative has no first person, because it is impossible to command one's self.

### Optative and Subjunctive.

I join them together, because their tenses are similar.

#### Present.

Sing.	<i>que eu tenha, ou haja</i>	that I have, or that I may have
	<i>que tu tenhas, ou hájas</i>	thou hast, or mayest have
	<i>que elle tenha, ou haja</i>	he has, or may have
Plur.	<i>que nos tenhamos, ou hajâmos</i>	we have, or may have
	<i>que vos tenhamos, ou hajâes</i>	ye have, or may have
	<i>que elles tenham, ou hajaõ</i>	they have, or may have

#### First Preterimperfect.

Sing.	<i>que eu tivêra or tivêsse,</i>	that I had, or I should, would, &c. have, &c.
	<i>houvera or houvesse</i>	
	<i>que tu tivêras or tivesses,</i>	
	<i>houvéras or houvésses</i>	
Plur.	<i>que elle tivera or tivêsse</i>	that we had, or we should, would, &c. have, &c.
	<i>houvéra or houvesse</i>	
	<i>que nós tivêramos or tivéssemos,</i>	
	<i>houvéramos or houvéssemos</i>	
Plur.	<i>que vos tivêreis or tivesseis,</i>	that we had, or we should, would, &c. have, &c.
	<i>houvéreis or houvésseis</i>	
	<i>que elles tivêraõ or tivessem,</i>	
	<i>houvéraõ or houvésssem</i>	

#### Second Preterimperfect.

Sing.	<i>eu teria ou haveria</i>	I should, would, or could have, &c.
	<i>tu terias ou haverias</i>	
	<i>elle teria ou haveria</i>	
Plur.	<i>nos teriamos ou haveriamos</i>	we should, would, or could have, &c.
	<i>vos terieis ou haverieis</i>	
	<i>elles teriaõ ou haveriaõ</i>	

#### Preterperfect.

Sing.	<i>que eu tenha tido ou havido,</i>	that I have had
	<i>que tu tenhas tido ou havido</i>	
	<i>que elle tenha tido ou havido</i>	
Plur.	<i>que nós tenhamos tido ou havido</i>	thou hast had
	<i>que vos tenhaes tido ou havi-lo</i>	
	<i>que elles tenham tido ou havido</i>	

Preter-



## Preterpluperfect.

It is compounded of the first preterimperfect subjunctive and the participle.

Sing.	<i>se eu tivéra ou tivésse</i> <i>se tu tivéras ou tivésse</i> <i>se elle tivéra ou tivésse</i>	} <i>tido</i> {	if I had had, &c.
Plur.	<i>se nós tivéramos ou tivéssemos</i> <i>se vós tivéreis ou tivésseis</i> <i>se elles tivérao ou tivéssem</i>		

## Second Preterpluperfect.

It is compounded of the second preterimperfect subjunctive and the participle.

Sing.	<i>eu teria</i> <i>tu terias</i> <i>elle teria</i>	} <i>tido</i> {	I should have had, &c.
Plur.	<i>nos teriamos</i> <i>vos terieis</i> <i>elles teriaõ</i>		

## First Future.

Sing.	<i>se eu tiver</i> <i>tu tiveres</i> <i>elle tiver</i>	if I shall have thou shalt have he shall have
Plur.	<i>se nos tivermos</i> <i>vos tiverdes</i> <i>elles tiverem</i>	if we shall have you shall have they shall have

This tense may be conjugated also thus; *houver*, *houveres*, *houver*; *houvermos*, *houverdes*, *houverem*. See the Syntax of the auxiliary Verbs.

## Second Future.

It is composed of the First Future and the Participle.

Sing.	<i>se eu tiver</i> <i>tiveres</i> <i>tiver</i>	} <i>tido</i> {	if I shall have had, &c.
Plur.	<i>tivérmos</i> <i>tivérdes</i> <i>tiverem</i>		

## Infinitive Mood.

## Present.

*ter*

to have

Preter-



Preterperfect.

*ter tido*, to have had.

Participles.

Preterit. Sing. *tido*, *tida*, Plur. *tidos*, *tidas*, had.

Future.

*que ha de ter*, that is to have.

Gerunds.

*tendo*, having or in having. *tendo tido*, having had.

Supine.

It is supplied in Portuguese by the prepositions *a* or *para*, and the verb is infinitive ; as

*para ter*, to have.

In like manner are conjugated its compounds, *contenho*, *detenho*, *mantenho*, &c.

*Remarks upon the auxiliary verb, ter, to have.*

The verb *ter*, to have, is an auxiliary or helping verb, which serves to conjugate other verbs : example, *ter lido*, to have read ; *nos temos feito*, we have done ; *elles tem visto*, they have seen, &c.

When the verb *ter* is followed by the particle *que*, before an infinitive mood, it denotes the duty, inclination, &c. of doing any thing ; as, *que tendes que fazer* ? what have you to do ? *tenho que fazer huma visita*, I must pay a visit ; *elle tem muito que dizervos*, he has a great many things to tell you.

*Of the auxiliary verb haver.*

This is one of the most auxiliary verbs in Portuguese, since it is not only auxiliary to itself, as *eu hei de haver*, I must have ; *eu havia de haver*, I was to have, &c. but also to all sorts of verbs ; as *eu hei de cantar*, I will sing, or I must sing, or I am to sing ; *eu hei de hir*, I must go ; *eu havia de fallar*, I was to speak ; *eu hei de escrever*, I must write, &c. In which examples you may see that the verb *haver*, when auxiliary, has generally the particle *de* and the verb of the infinitive mood after it ; and

E

that



that then it denotes a firm resolution, possibility, or necessity of doing any thing; therefore it is not to be rendered into English by the verb *to have*; as you may see in the second, third, and fourth future of the indicative mood.

The verb *haver*, with the particle *de*, and the verb *ser* to be, after it, is an auxiliary both to the passive verbs, and sometimes to the verb *ser* itself; as, *bei de ser feliz*. I shall be happy; *O principe ha de ser respeitado*, the prince ought to be, or must be, respected.

The same verb *haver* is also auxiliary without the particle *de*; but then it is put after the verb to which it is auxiliary; and so they say, *darvos-bei*, I will give you; *darlhe-bei*, I will give to him, &c. In which examples you may observe, that the auxiliary verb *haver* is put after the verb and the pronouns conjunctive, *te*, *lhe*, &c. and sometimes it is put after the verbs and the pronouns mixed; as, *mandar volo bei*, I'll send it to you. Take notice, however, that in the foregoing examples the verb *haver* may be put before the other verb; but then it requires the particle *de*, and has a different meaning; as, in the first example, you may say, *bei de darvos*, I must give to you. You must also observe, that when the indicative present of the auxiliary verb *haver* is auxiliary to other verbs, as in the foregoing examples, you must cut off the last letters *ei* from the future of the verbs; and so you may say, *darlhe-bei*, or *bei de dar-lhe*; but not *darei lhe-bei*, nor *bei de darei-lhe*. Moreover, when the preterimperfect *bavia* is to be auxiliary to any verb, and it is to be placed after it, you must make use of *hia*, *bias*, *hia*, *biamos*, *bieis*, *biao*: and so you may say, *dar-lhe-hia*, *bias*, &c. but not *dar-lhe bavia*, *bavias*, &c. I should give to him, thou shouldest, &c.

We shall not be at a loss how to express the interrogation in Portuguese, if only we put the pronouns personal after the verbs, as in English, and  
we



we shall never mistake in saying, *terei eu?* shall I have? *temos nos?* have we? *tens tu?* hast thou? *tem elle?* has he? but sometimes they do not mention the pronouns at all; as, *que faremos?* what shall we do? *cantaremos?* shall we sing?

Observe, that *haver* is sometimes Englished by *to be*; as, *que hade ser de mim?* what is to become of me?

When we speak by negation, we must use the word *naõ* before the verb; as, *naõ tenho*, I have not; *vos naõ conheceis*, you do not know, &c.

The conjugation of the auxiliary verb *ser*, or *estar*, to be.

Indicative.

Present.

Sing.	{	<i>eu sou</i> or <i>estou</i>	I am
		<i>tu es</i> or <i>estás</i>	thou art
		<i>elle he</i> or <i>está</i>	he is
Plur.	{	<i>nos somos</i> or <i>estamos</i>	we are
		<i>vois sois</i> or <i>estais</i>	you are
		<i>elles são</i> or <i>estão</i>	they are.

Preterimperfect.

Sing.	{	<i>eu era</i> or <i>estava</i>	I was
		<i>eras</i> or <i>estavas</i>	thou wast
		<i>era</i> or <i>estava</i>	he was
Plur.	{	<i>nos éramos</i> or <i>estávamos</i>	we were
		<i>ereis</i> or <i>estaveis</i>	you were
		<i>eraõ</i> or <i>estavaõ</i>	they were.

Preterperfect definite.

Sing.	{	<i>eu fui</i> or <i>estive</i>	I was
		<i>foste</i> or <i>estiveste</i>	thou wast
		<i>foi</i> or <i>estive</i>	he was
Plur.	{	<i>fomos</i> or <i>estivemos</i>	we were
		<i>fostes</i> or <i>estivestes.</i>	you were
		<i>foraõ</i> or <i>estiveraõ</i>	they were.



## Preterperfect.

It is compounded of the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *ter*, to have, and its own participle, *sido*, or *estado*.

## Preterpluperfect.

It is compounded of the preterimperfect indicative, and the participle *sido*, or *estado*.

Sing.	{	<i>eu tinha sido or estado</i>	I had been
		<i>tinhas sido or estado</i>	thou hadst been
		<i>tinha sido or estado</i>	he had been
Plur.	{	<i>tinhamos sido or estado</i>	we had been
		<i>tinheis sido or estado</i>	you had been
		<i>tinhaõ sido or estado</i>	they had been.

This tense may also be conjugated thus; *fora*, or *estivera*; *foras*, or *estiveras*; *fora*, or *estivera*; *foramos*, or *estiveramos*; *foreis*, or *estiveréis*; *foraõ*, or *estiveraõ*.

## Future.

Sing.	{	<i>eu serei or estarei</i>	I shall or will be
		<i>serás or estarás</i>	thou shalt be
		<i>será or estará</i>	he shall be
Plur.	{	<i>seramos or estaremos</i>	we shall be
		<i>sereis or estareis</i>	you shall be
		<i>seraõ or estaraõ</i>	they shall be.

## Imperative.

Sing.	{	<i>se tu or está</i>	be thou
		<i>seja or esteja elle</i>	let him be
Plur.	{	<i>sejamos or estejamos nos</i>	let us be
		<i>sede or estai vos</i>	be you
		<i>sejaõ or estejaõ elles</i>	let them be.

## Optative and Subjunctive.

## Present.

Sing.	{	<i>que eu seja or esteja</i>	that I may be, or that I be
		<i>sejas or estejas</i>	thou mayst be or be
		<i>seja or esteja</i>	he may be, &c.

Plur.



Plur. {	<i>sejamos</i> or <i>estejamos</i>	we may be
	<i>sejais</i> or <i>estejais</i>	you may be
	<i>sejaõ</i> or <i>estejaõ</i>	they may be.

First Preterimperfect.

Sing. {	<i>que eu fora</i> or <i>fosse,</i>	} that I were or might be
	<i>estivera</i> or <i>estivesse</i>	
	<i>foras</i> or <i>fosses,</i>	} thou wert
	<i>estiveras</i> or <i>estivesses</i>	
	<i>fora</i> or <i>fosse,</i>	} he were
	<i>estivera</i> or <i>estivesse</i>	
Plur. {	<i>que nos foramos</i> or <i>fossamos,</i>	} that we were
	<i>estiveramos</i> or <i>estivessemos</i>	
	<i>foreis</i> or <i>fosseis,</i>	} you were
	<i>estivereis</i> or <i>estivesseis,</i>	
	<i>foraõ</i> or <i>fosssem,</i>	} they were.
	<i>estiveraõ</i> or <i>estivessem</i>	

Second Preterimperfect.

Sing. {	<i>eu seria</i> or <i>estaria</i>	I should or would be
	<i>serias</i> or <i>estarias</i>	thou shouldest be
	<i>seria</i> or <i>estaria</i>	he should be
Plur. {	<i>seríamos</i> or <i>estariamos</i>	we should be
	<i>serieis</i> or <i>estarieis</i>	you should be
	<i>seriaõ</i> or <i>estariaõ</i>	they should be.

Preterperfect.

It is compounded of the present conjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*, and its own participle *sido*, or *estado*.

Sing. {	<i>que eu tenha sido</i> or <i>estado</i>	that I have been
	<i>tenhas sido</i> or <i>estado</i>	thou hast been
	<i>tenha sido, &amp;c.</i>	he has been
Plur. {	<i>tenhamos sido, &amp;c.</i>	that we have been
	<i>tenhais sido, &amp;c.</i>	you have been
	<i>tenhaõ sido, &amp;c.</i>	they have been.

Preterpluperfect.

It is compounded of the first preterimperfect subjunctive of the verb *ter*, and its own participle.



Sing.	{	<i>se eu tivera or tivesse</i>	}	if I had been;
		<i>sido or estado</i>		thou hadst been
		<i>tiveras, &amp;c.</i>		he had been
Plur.	{	<i>tivera, &amp;c.</i>		we had been
		<i>tiveramos, &amp;c.</i>		you had been
		<i>tivereis, &amp;c.</i>		they had been:
		<i>tiveraõ, &amp;c.</i>		

## Second Preterpluperfect.

It is compounded of the second preterimperfect subjunctive of the verb *ter*, and its own participle *sido* or *estado*.

Sing.	{	<i>eu teria sido or estado</i>		I should or would have been
		<i>terias, &amp;c.</i>		thou shouldst have been
		<i>teria, &amp;c.</i>		he should have been
Plur.	{	<i>teriãmos, &amp;c.</i>		we should have been
		<i>terieis, &amp;c.</i>		you should have been
		<i>teriaõ, &amp;c.</i>		they should have been.

## First Future.

Sing.	{	<i>quando eu for or estiver</i>		when I shall be
		<i>fores or estiveres</i>		thou shalt be
		<i>for or estiver</i>		he shall be
Plur.	{	<i>formos or estivermos</i>		we shall be
		<i>fordes or estiverdes</i>		you shall be
		<i>forem or estiverem</i>		they shall be.

## Second Future.

It is compounded of the future subjunctive of the verb *ter* and its own participle.

Sing.	{	<i>quando eu tiver sido or estado</i>		when I shall have been
		<i>tiveres sido, &amp;c.</i>		thou shalt have been
		<i>tiver sido, &amp;c.</i>		he shall have been
Plur.	{	<i>tivermos sido, &amp;c.</i>		we shall have been
		<i>tiverdes sido, &amp;c.</i>		you shall have been
		<i>tiverem sido, &amp;c.</i>		they shall have been

## Infinitive.

## Present.

*ser or estar* to be

## Preterperfect.

*ter sido or estado* to have been.

Parti-



Participles.

Pret.

*sido* or *estado*      been.

Future.

*futuro*, or *que ha de ser*, or *estar*      future, or that is to be.

Gerunds.

*sendo* or *estando*      being  
*tendo sido* or *estado*      having been.

Supine.

*para ser* or *estar*      to be.

Remarks upon the verb *ser* and *estar*.

There is a considerable difference between these verbs *ser* and *estar* both in Portuguese and Spanish. In English there is no word to distinguish them, since they are both rendered into English by *to be*. *Ser* signifies the proper and inseparable essence of a thing, its quality or quantity; as, *ser homem*, to be a man; *ser bom*, to be good; *ser alto*, to be tall; *ser largo*, to be wide; *ser branco*, to be white, &c. But *estar* denotes a place, or any adventitious quality; as, *estar em Londres*, to be in London; *estar de saude*, to be in health; *estar frio*, to be cold; *estar quente*, to be warm; *estar doente*, to be sick; *estar enfadado*, to be angry; *estar alegre*, to be merry, &c.

Take notice, that you may use *estar* before the gerunds, but not *ser*; therefore you may say, *estou fallando*, *lendo*, &c. I am speaking, reading, &c. but not *sou fallando*, &c.

*The three Conjugations of regular Active Verbs.*

A regular verb is such as is confined to general rules in its conjugation.



A verb active denotes the action or impression of the subject, and governs a noun which is the object of that action or impression; as, *amar a virtude*, to love virtue; *receber cartas*, to receive letters.

The regular Portuguese verbs have three different terminations in the infinitive; to wit, in *ar*, *er*, *ir*; as, *amar*, to love; *temer*, to fear; *admittir*, to admit.

*An easy Method of learning to conjugate Portuguese Verbs.*

I have reduced all the tenses of the Portuguese verbs to eight; four of which are general, and have the same terminations in all the verbs; and the other four may be likewise made general by changing some letters, and all the conjugations reduced to one.

The general tenses are, the Future Indicative, the first and second preterimperfect subjunctive and the first future subjunctive.

The future indicative is terminated in all the verbs, in

*rei, ras, ra; remos, reis, raõ.*

The imperfect subjunctive, in  
*ra* or *ſſe*, *ras* or *ſſes*, *ra* or *ſſe*; *ramos* or *ſſemos*, *reis*  
or *ſſeis*, *raõ* or *ſſem*.

The second imperfect, in  
*ria, rias, ria; riamos, rieis, riaõ.*

The first future subjunctive, in  
*es, mos, des, em.*

Note, that I have only put the termination of the second person singular of the future subjunctive, because the first and third of the same number are like their respective infinitives of the three conjugations, which however keep both their last consonant and



and vowel before the terminations I have marked for the second person singular, and for the whole plural. As to the future indicative, you have nothing to do but add *ei* to the respective present infinitive of the three conjugations, in order to form the first person singular; and if you add to the same infinitive present *as*, you shall form the second person singular of it, and so of all the rest, by adding to the infinitive present *a*, *emos*, *eis*, *aō*.

The imperfect subjunctive has two terminations for every person, both in the singular and plural; but if you cut off the last consonant *r* of the infinitive, and then add to it the terminations above-mentioned, you shall form the imperfect subjunctive, according to its two different terminations. Lastly, if you cut off the last consonant of the infinitive, and add to it the terminations above proposed, you shall form the second imperfect subjunctive.

The present indicative of all the three conjugations is formed by changing the last letters of the infinitive, viz. *ar*, *er*, *ir*, into *o*; as, *amo*, *entendo*, *admitto*, from *amar*, *entender*, *admittir*.

The preterimperfect indicative is formed in the first conjugation, by changing the last consonant of the infinitive, viz. *r*, into *va*, *vas*, *va*, *vamos*, *veis*, *vaō*; but in the second conjugation it is formed by changing the termination *er* of the infinitive into *ia*, *ias*, *ia*, *iamos*, *ieis*, *iaō*; and in the third by changing only the last consonant *r* of the infinitive into *a*, *as*, *a*; *amos*, *eis*, *aō*.

The perfect definite in the first conjugation is formed by changing the termination *ar* of the infinitive into *ei*, *este*, *ou*, *amos*, *astes*, *araō*; and in the second conjugation it is formed by changing the termination *er* of the infinitive into *i*, *este*, *eo*, *emos*, *estes*, *eraō*. In the third conjugation the same tense

is



is formed by changing the termination *ir* of the infinitive into *i*, *este*, *io*, *imos*, *istes*, *iraō*.

The present subjunctive in the first conjugation is formed by changing the termination *ar* of the infinitive into *e*, *es*, *e*, *emos*, *eis*, *em*; and in the second conjugation it is formed by changing the termination *er* of the infinitive into *a*, *as*, *a*, *amos*, *ais*, *aō*. In the third conjugation the same tense is formed by changing the termination *ir* of the infinitive into the same terminations, *a*, *as*, *a*, &c.

As to the imperative mood, you may only observe, that the second person singular is always the same as the third person singular of the present indicative, in all the conjugations.

The participles of the preterperfect tense in the first conjugation are formed by changing the last consonant *r* of the infinitive into *do* for the masculine, and *da* for the feminine; and into *dos*, *das*, for the plural: but when you come to verbs of the second conjugation, you change the termination *r* of the infinitive into *ido*, *ida*, &c.

In the third conjugation you must change the last consonant *r* of the infinitive into *do* for the masculine, *da* for the feminine, &c.

### *The first Conjugation of the Verbs in ar.*

#### The Indicative Mood.

I shall put the pronouns personal, *eu*, *tu*, *elle*, &c. no more.

#### Present.

<i>amo</i>	I love
<i>amas</i>	thou lovest
<i>ama</i>	he loves
<i>amamos,</i>	we love
<i>amais</i>	ye love
<i>amaō,</i>	they love.

#### Preter-



Preterimperfect.

<i>amava</i>	I did love
<i>amavas</i>	thou didst love
<i>amava</i>	he did love
<i>amávamos</i>	we did love
<i>amáveis</i>	you did love
<i>amavaõ</i>	they did love.

Preterperfect definite.

<i>amei</i>	I loved
<i>amáste</i>	thou loved'st
<i>amou</i>	he loved
<i>amámos</i>	we loved
<i>amástes</i>	you loved
<i>amáraõ</i>	they loved

Preterperfect.

This tense is composed of the participle *amado* and the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

<i>tenho amado</i>	I have loved
<i>tens amado</i>	thou hast loved
<i>tem amado</i>	he has loved
<i>temos amado</i>	we have loved
<i>tendes amado</i>	you have loved
<i>tem amado</i>	they have loved.

Preterpluperfect.

This tense is composed of the participle *amado*, and the imperfect of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

N. B. This tense may be conjugated thus, *amara*, *amaras*, *amara*, *amaramos*, *amareis*, *amaraõ*; or,

<i>tinha amado</i>	I had loved
<i>tinhas amado</i>	thou hadst loved
<i>tinha amado</i>	he had loved
<i>tinhamos amado</i>	we had loved
<i>tinheis amado</i>	you had loved
<i>tinhaõ amado</i>	they had loved.

Future.

<i>amarei</i>	I shall or will love
<i>amarás</i>	thou shalt love
<i>amará</i>	he shall love



# P O R T U G U E S E

<i>amaremos</i>	we shall love
<i>amareis</i>	you shall love
<i>amarão</i>	they shall love

## Imperative.

<i>ama tu</i>	love thou
<i>ame elle</i>	let him love
<i>amemos nós</i>	let us love
<i>amai vós</i>	love ye
<i>amem elles</i>	let them love.

## Optative and Subjunctive.

<i>que eu ame</i>	that I may love
<i>ames</i>	thou mayest love
<i>ame</i>	he may love
<i>amemos</i>	we may love
<i>ameis</i>	you may love
<i>amem</i>	they may love.

## First Preterimperfect.

<i>que eu amára or amásse</i>	that I might or could love
<i>amáras or amásse</i>	thou mightest love
<i>amára or amásse</i>	he might love
<i>amáramos or amássemos</i>	we might love
<i>amáreis or amásseis</i>	you might love
<i>amárao or amássem</i>	they might love.

When we find the conjunction *if* before the indicative imperfect, we must use the imperfect of the subjunctive or optative, when we speak by way of wish or desire; as if I did love, *se eu amasse*, or *amara*, and not *se eu amava*, if I had loved; If I had, *se eu tivera*, or *tivesse*, and not *se eu tinha*; and so in all the verbs.

## Second preterimperfect:

<i>amaría</i>	I should love
<i>amarías</i>	thou shouldst love
<i>amaría</i>	he should love
<i>amaríamos</i>	we should love
<i>amaríeis</i>	you should love
<i>amaríao</i>	they should love.

Preter-



## Preterperfect.

It is composed of the participle *amado* and the present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

<i>que eu tenha amado</i>	that I have loved
<i>tenhas amado</i>	thou hast loved
<i>tenha amado</i>	he has loved
<i>tenhamos amado</i>	we have loved
<i>tenhais amado</i>	you have loved
<i>tenham amado</i>	they have loved.

## Preterpluperfect.

It is composed of the participle *amado* and the first preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

<i>se eu tivera or tivesse amado</i>	if I had loved
<i>tiveras or tivessees amado</i>	thou hadst loved
<i>tivera or tivesse amado</i>	he had loved
<i>tiveramos or tivessemos amado</i>	we had loved
<i>tiveréis or tivesses amado</i>	you had loved
<i>tiverão or tivessem amado</i>	they had loved.

## Second Preterpluperfect.

It is composed of the participle *amado* and the second preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

<i>terêa amado</i>	I should have loved
<i>terêas amado</i>	thou shouldst have loved
<i>terêa amado</i>	he should have loved
<i>terêamos amado</i>	we should have loved
<i>terêeis amado</i>	ye should have loved
<i>terêão amado</i>	they should have loved.

## Future.

<i>quando eu amar</i>	when I shall love
<i>amares</i>	thou shalt love
<i>amar</i>	he shall love
<i>amarmos</i>	we shall love
<i>amardes</i>	you shall love
<i>amarem</i>	they shall love.

Second



## Second Future.

It is composed of the participle *amado*, and the future subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

<i>quando eu tiver amado</i>	when I shall have loved
<i>tiveres amado</i>	thou shalt have loved
<i>tiver amado</i>	he shall have loved
<i>tivermos amado</i>	we shall have loved
<i>tiverdes amado</i>	you shall have loved
<i>tiverem amado</i>	they shall have loved.

## Infinitive.

## Present.

<i>amar</i>	to love.
-------------	----------

## Preterperfect.

<i>ter amado</i>	to have loved.
------------------	----------------

## Participle.

## Present.

<i>que ama, or amante</i>	that loves.
---------------------------	-------------

## Pret.

<i>amado, masc. amada, fem.</i>	loved.
---------------------------------	--------

## Future.

<i>que ha de amar</i>	that is to love.
-----------------------	------------------

## Gerunds.

<i>amando</i>	loving
<i>tendo amado</i>	having loved.

## Supine.

<i>para amar</i>	to love.
------------------	----------

Note, the verbs terminating in the infinitive in *car* take *qu* in those tenses, where the *c* would otherwise meet with the vowel *e*; and those terminating in the infinitive in *gar* take an *u* in those tenses where the *g* would otherwise meet with the same vowel *e*; that is to say, in the first person singular of the preterperfect definite, in the third person singular,



singular, in the first and third plural of the imperative, and in the whole present subjunctive, which are the tenses I shall give you by way of example, in the verbs *peccar* and *pagar*.

*Peccar*, to sin.

Preterperfect definite.

*eu pequei*, I sinned——instead of *peccei*.

Imperative.

*peque elle*, let him sin; *pequemos nos*, let us sin; *pequem elles*, let them sin——and not *pecce elle*, &c.

Present subjunctive.

*que eu peque*, *tu peques*, that I may sin——and not *que eu pecce*, *pecces*, &c.

*Pagar*, to pay.

Preterperfect definite.

*paguei* I paid.

Imperative.

*pague elle*, *paguemos nos*, *paguem elles*, let him pay, &c.

Present Subjunctive.

*que eu pague*, *pagues*, *pague*, *paguemos*, *pagueis*, *paguem*, that I may pay, &c.——and not *page*, *pages*, &c.

The other tenses are conjugated like *amar*.

### Regular verbs in *ar*.

*Abafar*, to choke, or to smother

*Abalar*, to shake

*Abanar*, to fan

*Abastar*, to satiate

*Abaxar*, to bring, or let down

*Abençoar*, to bless

*Abocanhar*, to carp

*Abominar*, to abominate

*Abotoar*, to button

*Acabar*, to finish

*Admoestar*, to admonish

*Affrontar*, to abuse

*Agarrar*, to lay hold of

*Alagar*, to overflow

*Amaldiçoar*, to curse

*Annular*, to annul, or to make void

*Aprestar*, to press or hasten

*Aquentar*, to warm

*Argumentar*, to argue

*Affoprar*, to blow

*Atar*, to tie

*Avassalar*, to subdue, to conquer

*Azedar*, to sour.

Of



*Of the Verbs Passive.*

Before we proceed to the second conjugation, it is necessary to know that the verbs passive, which express the suffering or reception of an action, are nothing more than the particles of verbs active, conjugated with the verb *ser*, to be.

## EXAMPLE.

## Present tense.

<i>eu sou amado</i>	I am loved
<i>tu es amado</i>	thou art loved
<i>elle he amado</i>	he is loved
<i>nos somos amados</i>	we are loved
<i>vos sois amados</i>	you are loved
<i>elles são amados</i>	they are loved

and so throughout the other moods and tenses.

The second conjugation of the verbs in *er*.

## Indicative Mood.

## Present.

<i>vendo</i>	I sell
<i>vendes</i>	thou sellest
<i>vende</i>	he sells
<i>vendemos</i>	we sell
<i>vendeis</i>	you sell
<i>vendem</i>	they sell.

## Preterimperfect.

<i>vendia</i>	I did sell
<i>vendias</i>	thou didst sell
<i>vendia</i>	he did sell
<i>vendiamos</i>	we did sell
<i>vendieis</i>	you did sell
<i>vendiaõ</i>	they did sell

## Preterperfect definite.

<i>vendi</i>	I sold
<i>vendeste</i>	thou soldest
<i>vendêo</i>	he sold



<i>vendemos</i>	we sold
<i>vendestes</i>	you sold
<i>venderão</i>	they sold

Preterperfect.

<i>tenho</i> <i>tens</i> <i>tem</i> <i>temos</i> <i>tendes</i> <i>tem</i>	<i>vendido</i>	I have sold, &c.
--	----------------	------------------

Peterpluperfect.

<i>tinha</i> <i>tinhas</i> <i>tinha</i> <i>tínhamos</i> <i>tínheis</i> <i>tinhaõ</i>	<i>véndido</i>	I had sold, &c.
---	----------------	-----------------

This tense may be also conjugated thus; *vendera*, *venderas*, *vendera*, *venderamos*, *vendereis*, *venderão*.

Future.

<i>venderei</i> <i>venderás</i> <i>venderá</i> <i>venderemos</i> <i>vendereis</i> <i>venderão</i>	I shall or will sell, &c
--	--------------------------

Imperative Mood.

<i>vénde tu</i>	sell thou
<i>vénda elle</i>	let him sell
<i>vendámos nos</i>	let us sell
<i>vendei vos</i>	sell ye
<i>vendaõ elles</i>	let them sell.

Optative and Subjunctive.

<i>que eu venda</i> <i>vendas</i> <i>venda</i> <i>vendamos</i> <i>vendáis</i> <i>vendaõ</i>	that I may sell, &c.
--	----------------------

F

Preter-



## Preterimperfect.

<i>que eu vendra or vendesse</i>	that I might or could sell,
<i>vendras or vendesses</i>	Ec.
<i>vendera or vendesse</i>	
<i>venderamos or vendessemos</i>	
<i>venderais or vendesseis</i>	
<i>venderaõ or vendessem</i>	

## Second Preterimperfect.

<i>venderia</i>	I should sell, Ec.
<i>venderias</i>	
<i>venderia</i>	
<i>venderiamos</i>	
<i>venderieis</i>	
<i>venderiaõ</i>	

## Preterperfect.

<i>que eu tenha</i>	} <i>vendido</i> {	that I have sold, Ec.
<i>tenhas</i>		
<i>tenha</i>		
<i>tenhamos</i>		
<i>tenhais</i>		
<i>tenhaõ</i>		

## Preterpluperfect.

<i>se eu tivéra or tivésse</i>	} <i>vendido</i> {	if I had sold, Ec.
<i>tivéras or tivesses</i>		
<i>tivéra or tivésse</i>		
<i>tivéramos or tivéssemos</i>		
<i>tivéreis or tivésseis</i>		
<i>tiveraõ or tivéssem</i>		

## Second Preterpluperfect.

<i>eu teria</i>	} <i>vendido</i> {	I should have sold, Ec.
<i>terias</i>		
<i>teria</i>		
<i>teriamos</i>		
<i>tericis</i>		
<i>teriaõ</i>		

Future



Future.

*quando eu vendér*      when I shall sell, &c.  
*vendéres*  
*vendér*  
*vendérmós*  
*vendérdes*  
*vendérem.*

Second Future.

<i>quando eu tivér</i>	}	<i>vendido</i>	{	when I shall have sold, &c.
<i>tivéres</i>				
<i>tivér</i>				
<i>tivérmós</i>				
<i>tivérdes</i>				
<i>tivérem</i>				

Infinitive Mood.

Present.

*vender*      to sell.

Preterperfect.

*ter vendido*      to have sold.

Participle.

Present.

*que vende*      that sell, that sells.

Preterit.

*vendido, masc. vendida, fem. Plur. vendidos, vendidas, sold.*

Future.

*que ha de vender*      that is to sell.

Gerund.

*vendendo*      selling  
*tendo vendido*      having sold.

Supine.

*para vender*      to sell.

After the same manner as the verb *vender* are conjugated all the other regular verbs of the second conjugation ending in *er*; as the following:



*Acometer*, to attack*Beber*, to drink*Comer*, to eat*Comprehender*, to perceive, or  
apprehend*Cometer*, to commit*Conceder*, to grant*Correr*, to run*Dever*, to owe*Esconder*, to hide*Emprender*, to undertake*Meter*, to put in*Offender*, to offend*Prometer*, to promise*Responder*, to answer*Reprehender*, to reprove*Temer*, to fear*Varrer*, to sweep, &c.The third conjugation of the verbs ending in *ir*.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

*admitto* I admit, &c.*admittes**admitte**admittimos**admittis**admittem.*

Preterimperfect.

*admittia* I did admit, &c.*admittias**admittia**admittiamos**admittieis**admittiaõ.*

Preterperfect definite.

*admitti* I admitted*admittiste**admittio**admittimos**admittistes**admittiraõ.*

Preterperfect.

This tense is composed of the participle *admittido*,  
and the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *ter*.*tenho admittido**tens admittido, &c.*

I have admitted

thou hast, &amp;c.

Preterpluperfect.

This tense is composed of the participle *admittido*  
and the imperfect of the auxiliary verb *ter*.*tinha admittido**tinhas admittido, &c.*

I had admitted

thou hadst, &amp;c.

This tense may also be conjugated thus; *admittira*, *admit-  
tiras*, *admittira*, *admittiram*, *admittireis*, *admittiraõ*.

Future.



Future.

<i>admittirei</i>	I shall or will admit
<i>admittirás</i>	
<i>admittirá</i>	
<i>admittiremos</i>	
<i>admittireis</i>	
<i>admittiraō.</i>	

Imperative.

<i>admitte tu</i>	admit thou
<i>admitta elle</i>	let him admit
<i>admittamos nós</i>	let us admit
<i>admitti vós</i>	admit ye
<i>admittaō elles</i>	let them admit.

Optative and Subjunctive.

Present.

<i>que eu admitta</i>	that I may admit, &c.
<i>admittas</i>	
<i>admitta</i>	
<i>admittamos</i>	
<i>admittais</i>	
<i>admittaō.</i>	

First Preterimperfect.

<i>que eu admittira or admittisse</i>	that I might admit, &c.
<i>admittiras or admittisses</i>	
<i>admittira or admittisse</i>	
<i>admittiramos or admittissimos</i>	
<i>admittireis or admittisseis</i>	
<i>admittiraō or admittissem.</i>	

Second Preterimperfect.

<i>admittiria</i>	I should or would admit, &c.
<i>admittirias</i>	
<i>admittiri</i>	
<i>admittiriamos</i>	
<i>admittiries</i>	
<i>admittiriaō.</i>	

Preterperfect.

This tense is composed of the participle *admittido* and the present subjunctive of the verb *ter*.

<i>que eu tenha admittido</i>	that I have admitted
<i>tenhas admittido, &amp;c.</i>	thou hast admitted, &c.



## Perterpluperfect.

It is composed of the first preterimperfect subjunctive of the verb *ter* and the participle *admittido*.

<i>se eu tivera admittido</i>	if I had admitted
<i>tiveras, &amp;c.</i>	thou hadst admitted, &c.

## Second Preterpluperfect.

It is composed of the second preterimperfect subjunctive of the verb *ter* and the participle *admittido*.

<i>eu teria admittido</i>	I should have admitted
<i>terias, &amp;c.</i>	thou shouldst, &c.

## First Future.

<i>se eu admittir</i>	if I shall admit, &c.
<i>admittires</i>	
<i>admittir</i>	
<i>admittirmos</i>	
<i>admittirdes</i>	
<i>admittirem.</i>	

## Second Future.

It is composed of the first Future Subjunctive of the verb *ter* and the participle *admittido*.

<i>se eu tiver admittida</i>	if I shall have admitted
<i>tiveres, &amp;c.</i>	thou shalt, &c.

## Infinitive Mood.

## Present.

<i>admittir</i>	to admit.
-----------------	-----------

## Preterperfect.

<i>ter admittido</i>	to have admitted.
----------------------	-------------------

## Participle.

## Pret.

*admittido*, for the masc. *admittida*, for the fem. admitted.

## Future.

<i>que ha de admittir</i>	that is to admit.
---------------------------	-------------------

## Gerunds.

<i>admittindo</i>	admitting.
<i>tendo admittido</i>	having admitted.

## Supines.

<i>para admittir</i>	to admit.
----------------------	-----------

Conjugate



Conjugate after the same manner the following verbs :

*Abrir*, to open.

*Conduzir*, to conduct.

*Introduzir*, to introduce.

*Induzir*, to enduce.

*Produzir*, to produce.

*Luzir*, to shine.

*Nutrir*, to nourish.

*Reduzir*, to reduce, to bring to.

*Traduzir*, to translate.

*Deduzir*, to deduct, &c.

*Of the irregular Verbs in ar.*

There are in each conjugation some verbs which do not conform to the common rule, and on that account are called irregulars.

There are but two of the first conjugation, which in some of their tenses depart from the rule of the verb *amar*, viz. *estár* and *dar*. We have already conjugated the first, and the second is conjugated in the following manner.

Indicative.

*dou*, I give

*dás*, thou givest

*da*, he gives

*damos*, we give

*dais*, you give

*daõ*, they give.

Preterimperfect.

*dava*, I did give, &c. (as in regular verbs of the first conjugation.)  
*davas*, &c.

Preterperfect definite.

*dei*, I gave

*dêste*, thou gavest

*deu*, he gave

*dêmos*, we gave

*dêstes*, you gave

*dêraõ*, they gave.

Preterperfect.

This tense is composed of the participle *dado* and the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *ter*; as *tenho dado*, I have given, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

This tense is composed of the participle *dado* and the imperfect of the auxiliary verb *ter*; as *eu tinha dado*, &c. I had given, &c.



## Future.

*darei*, I shall or will give, &c. (as in the verb *amar*.)  
*daras*, &c.

## Imperative.

	<i>demos nós</i> ,	let us give	
<i>dá tu</i> ,	give thou	<i>dai vós</i> ,	give you
<i>de elle</i> ,	let him give	<i>dem elles</i> ,	let them give.

## Optative and Subjunctive.

## Present.

*que eu de*, that I may give, &c.  
*des*  
*de*  
*demos*  
*deis*  
*dem*.

## Preterimperfect.

*que eu dera* or *desse*, that I might give, &c.  
*deras* or *desse*  
*dera* or *desse*  
*déramos* or *dessemos*  
*dereis* or *desseis*  
*dérao* or *dessem*.

## Second Imperfect.

<i>daria</i> , I should give, &c.	<i>dariam</i>
<i>darias</i>	<i>daries</i>
<i>daria</i>	<i>dariao</i> .

The preterperfect, preterpluperfect, and the second preterpluperfect are composed of the participle *dado* and the auxiliary verb *ter*, as in the regular verbs.

## Future.

*quando eu der*, When I shall give, &c.  
*dêres*  
*der*  
*derrmos*  
*derdes*  
*dêrem*.

## Second Future.

It is composed of the participle *dado*, &c. as the regular verbs.

## Infinitive



## Infinitive.

## Present.

*dar*, to give, &c. as in the regular verbs.

*Of the irregular Verbs in er.*

I begin with *fazer*, *poder*, and *saber*, because they occur ofteneſt in diſcourſe.

*Fazer*, to do or make.

## Indicative.

## Present.

<i>faço</i> , I do	<i>fazemos</i> , we do
<i>fazes</i> , thou doſt	<i>fazeis</i> , you do
<i>faz</i> , he does	<i>fazem</i> , they do.

## Imperfect.

<i>fazia</i> , I did or did make, &c.	<i>fazíamos</i>
<i>fazias</i>	<i>fazeis</i>
<i>fazia</i>	<i>fazião</i> .

## Preterperfect definite.

<i>fiz</i> , I made, &c.	<i>fizemos</i>
<i>fizeſte</i>	<i>fizeſtes</i>
<i>fez</i>	<i>fizerão</i> .

## Preterperfect.

<i>tenho feito</i> , I have done, &c.
<i>tens feito</i> , &c.

## Preterpluperfect.

<i>tinha feito</i> , I had done, &c.
<i>tinhas feito</i> , &c.

## Future.

<i>farei</i> , I ſhall do, &c. (according to the regular verb.)
<i>farás</i> , &c.

## Imperative.

<i>faça</i> tu, do thou	<i> façamos</i> <i>nos</i> , let us do
<i>faça</i> elle let him do	<i>faça</i> <i>vos</i> , do you
	<i>façaõ</i> <i>elles</i> , let them do.

## Optative



## Optative.

## Present.

*que eu faça,*      that I may do, &c. (according to the regular verbs.)  
*faças*  
*faça, &c.*

## Preterimperfect.

*que eu fizera or fizesse,*      that I might do, &c.  
*fizeras or fizesses*  
*fizera or fizesse*  
*fizéramos or fizéssamos*  
*fizeréis or fizésseis*  
*fizerao or fizésssem.*

## Second Imperfect.

*faria,*      I should do, &c.      *faríamos*  
*farías*      *faríeis*  
*faria*      *fariaõ.*

## Future.

*quando eu fizer,*      when I shall do, &c.  
*fizéres*  
*fizer*  
*fizérmos*  
*fizerdes*  
*fizerem.*

## Second Future.

*quando eu tiver feito,*      when I shall have done  
*tiveres feito, &c.*

## Infinitive.

*fazer,*      to do.

## Gerunds.

*fazendo,*      doing or in doing.

## Participle.

*feito,*      made or done.

After the same manner are conjugated *desfazer*, to undo; *contrafazer*, to counterfeit; *refazer*, to make again.

*Poder,*



*Poder*, to be able.

## Indicative.

## Present.

<i>posso</i> , I can, or am able	<i>podemos</i> , we can
<i>podes</i> , thou canst	<i>podeis</i> , you can
<i>pode</i> , he can	<i>podem</i> , they can.

## Imperfect.

*podia*, I could, or was able, &c.  
*podias*, &c.

## Preterperfect definite.

<i>pude</i> , I could	<i>pudemos</i> , we could
<i>pudeste</i> , thou couldst	<i>pudestes</i> , you could
<i>pode</i> , he could	<i>puderao</i> , they could

## Preterperfect.

*tenho podido*, &c. I have been able, &c.

## Future.

*poderei*, I shall be able, &c.  
*poderas*, &c.

There is no Imperative.

## Optative and Subjunctive.

## Present.

<i>que eu possa</i> ,	that I may be able
<i>possas</i> ,	thou mayst be able, &c.
<i>possa</i>	
<i>possamos</i>	
<i>possais</i>	
<i>possaõ</i>	

## Imperfect.

<i>que eu pudera</i> or <i>pudesse</i> ,	that I might be able
<i>puderas</i> or <i>pudesses</i> ,	thou mightst be able, &c.
<i>pudera</i> or <i>pudesse</i>	
<i>pudéram's</i> or <i>pudéssemos</i>	
<i>pudéreis</i> or <i>pudésseis</i>	
<i>puderaõ</i> or <i>pudéssem</i>	



## Second Imperfect.

*poderia,* I should be able, &c.  
*poderias, &c.*

## Future.

*quando eu puder,* when I shall be able, &c.

*puderes*  
*puder*  
*pudermos*  
*puderdes*  
*puderem*

## Infinitive.

## Present.

*poder,* to be able.

## Gerunds.

*podendo,* being able.

## Participle.

*podido,* been able.

*Saber,* to know.

## Indicative.

## Present.

<i>sei,</i>	I know	<i>sabemos,</i>	we know
<i>sabes,</i>	thou knowest	<i>sabeis,</i>	you know
<i>sabe,</i>	he knows	<i>sabem,</i>	they know.

## Imperfect.

*sabia,* I did know  
*sabias,* thou didst know, &c.  
*sabia, &c.*

## Preterperfect definite.

<i>soubé,</i>	I knew, &c.	<i>soubémos</i>
<i>soubéste</i>		<i>soubéstes</i>
<i>soubé</i>		<i>soubérao</i>

## Preterperfect.

*tenho sabido,* I have known, &c.

## Future.



Future.

*saberei,* I shall or will know, &c. (according to the  
*saberas, &c.* regular verbs.)

Imperative.

		<i>saibamos nós,</i>	let us know
<i>sabe tu,</i>	know thou	<i>sabei vós,</i>	know you
<i>saiba elle,</i>	let him know	<i>saibaõ elles,</i>	let them know.

Optative and Subjunctive.

Present.

<i>que eu saiba,</i>	I may know,
<i>saibas,</i>	thou mayst know, &c.
<i>saiba</i>	
<i>saibamos</i>	
<i>saibais</i>	
<i>saibaõ</i>	

Imperfect.

<i>que eu soubéra or saubéssse,</i>	that I might know, &c.
<i>soubéras or soubessses</i>	
<i>soubéra or soubéssse</i>	
<i>soubéramos or soubésssemos</i>	
<i>soubéreis or soubéssseis</i>	
<i>soubéraõ or soubésssem.</i>	

Second Imperfect.

<i>saberia,</i>	I should know, &c.	<i>saberíamos</i>
<i>saberias</i>		<i>saberíeis</i>
<i>saberia</i>		<i>saberiaõ</i>

Future.

<i>quando eu soubér,</i>	when I shall know, &c.
<i>souberes</i>	
<i>souber</i>	
<i>soubermos</i>	
<i>souberdes</i>	
<i>souberem</i>	

Infinitive.

Present.

*saber,* to know.

Gerund.

*sabendo,* knowing.

Participle.



## Participle.

*sabido* (for the masc.), *sabida* (for the feminine), known.

*Of the irregular Verb trazer, to bring.*

## Indicative.

## Present.

<i>trago,</i>	I bring	<i>trazemos,</i>	we bring, &c.
<i>trazes,</i>	thou bringest	<i>trazeis</i>	
<i>traz,</i>	he brings	<i>trazem.</i>	

## Imperfect.

*trazia,* I did bring  
*trazias,* &c. thou didst bring, &c. (according to the regulars.)

## Preterperfect definite.

<i>trouxe,</i>	I brought	<i>trouxemos</i>
<i>trouxeste,</i>	thou broughtest, &c.	<i>trouxestes</i>
<i>trouxe</i>		<i>trouxerao</i>

## Preterperfect.

*tenho trazido,* I have brought, &c.  
*tens trazido,* &c.

## Future.

<i>trarie,</i>	I shall or will bring, &c.	<i>traremos</i>
<i>trarás</i>		<i>trareis</i>
<i>trará</i>		<i>trarao</i>

## Imperative.

		<i>tragamos nós,</i>	let us bring
<i>traze tu,</i>	bring thou	<i>trazei vós,</i>	bring you
<i>traga elle,</i>	let him bring	<i>tragaõ elles,</i>	let them bring.

## Optative and Subjunctive.

## Present.

<i>que eu traga,</i>	that I may bring, &c.
<i>tragas</i>	
<i>traga</i>	
<i>tragamos</i>	
<i>tragais</i>	
<i>tragaõ.</i>	

## Imperfect.



## Imperfect.

*que eu trouxéra or trouxésse,*      that I might bring, &c.  
*trouxéras or trouxésse*  
*trouxéra or trouxésse*  
*trouxéramos or trouxéssemos*  
*trouxéreis or trouxésseis*  
*trouxéraõ or trouxéssem*

## Second Imperfect.

*eu traria,*      I should bring, &c.      *trariamos*  
*trarias*      *trarieis*  
*traria*      *trariaõ.*

## Future.

*quando eu trazer,*      when I shall bring, &c.  
*trouxeres*  
*trouxer*  
*trouxermos*  
*trouxerdes*  
*trouxerem*

## Infinitive.

## Present.

*trazer,* to bring.

## Gerund.

*trazendo,* bringing.

## Participle.

*trazido,* masc. *trazida,* fem. brought.

*The conjugation of the irregular Verb ver, to see.*

## Indicative.

## Present.

<i>vejo,</i>	I see	<i>vemos</i>
<i>ves,</i>	thou seeest	<i>vedes</i>
<i>ve,</i>	he sees, &c.	<i>vem.</i>

## Imperfect.

*via,*      I did see, &c.  
*vias,*  
*via, &c.*

Preter-



## Preterperfect definite.

<i>vi</i>	I saw, &c.	<i>vimos</i>
<i>viste</i>		<i>vistes</i>
<i>vio</i>		<i>viraõ</i>

## Preterperfect.

<i>tenho visto</i>	I have seen, &c.
<i>tens visto, &amp;c.</i>	

## Future.

<i>verei</i>	I shall see, &c.
<i>veras, &amp;c.</i>	

## Imperative.

<i>ve tu</i>	see thou
<i>veja elle</i>	let him see
<i>vejamos nos</i>	let us see
<i>vede vos</i>	see you
<i>vejaõ elles</i>	let them see.

## Optative.

<i>que eu veja</i>	that I may see, &c.	<i>vejamos</i>
<i>vejas</i>		<i>vejaís</i>
<i>veja</i>		<i>vejaõ</i>

## Imperfect.

<i>que eu vira or visse</i>	that I might see, &c.
<i>viras or visses</i>	
<i>vira or visse</i>	
<i>vîramos or vîssemos</i>	
<i>vîreis or vîsseis</i>	
<i>viraõ or vissem.</i>	

## Second Imperfect.

<i>eu veria,</i>	I should see, &c.	<i>veriamos</i>
<i>verias</i>		<i>verieis</i>
<i>veria</i>		<i>veriaõ</i>

## Future.

<i>quando eu vir,</i>	when I shall see &c.
<i>vires</i>	
<i>vir</i>	
<i>virmos</i>	
<i>virdes</i>	
<i>virem</i>	

Infini-



Infinitive.

*ver* to see.

Gerund.

*vendo* seeing.

Participle.

*visto, vista* seen.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds *antever*, *prever*, and *rever*.

The verb *prover*, when it signifies *to provide for*, or *to take care of*, is conjugated in the present indicative thus :

<i>eu provêho</i>	I take care of, &c.	<i>provîmos</i>
<i>provêns</i>		<i>provin.des</i>
<i>provêm</i>		<i>ptovêm.</i>

But, when it signifies *to make provision*, is conjugated in the same tense thus ;

<i>eu provêjo</i>	I make provision, &c.	<i>provêmos</i>
<i>provês</i>		<i>proveis</i>
<i>provê</i>		<i>provem.</i>

The conjugation of the auxiliary verb *dizer*, to say.

Indicative.

Present.

<i>digo</i>	I say, &c.	<i>dizemos</i>
<i>dizes</i>		<i>dizeis</i>
<i>diz</i>		<i>dizem.</i>

Preterimperfect.

<i>dizia,</i>	I did say, &c.
<i>dizias, &amp;c.</i>	

Preterperfect definite.

<i>disse</i>	I said, &c.	<i>dissemos</i>
<i>disseste</i>		<i>dissestes</i>
<i>disse</i>		<i>disseraõ.</i>



## Preterperfect.

*tenho ditto* I have said, &c.  
*tens ditto, &c.*

## Future.

*direi* I shall or will say, &c.  
*diras, &c.*

## Imperative.

<i>dize tu</i>	say thou
<i>diga elle</i>	let him say
<i>digamos nos</i>	let us say
<i>dizei vos</i>	say you
<i>digaõ elles</i>	let them say.

## Optative.

*que eu diga* that I may say, &c.  
*digas, &c.*

## Imperfect.

*que eu dissera* or *disseſſe* that I might say, &c.  
*disseras* or *disseſſes*  
*dissera* or *disseſſe*  
*disseramos* or *disseſſemos*  
*disseréis* or *disseſſeis*  
*disseraõ* or *disseſſem.*

## Second Imperfect.

*diria* I should say, &c.  
*dirias, &c.*

## Future.

*quando eu disser* when I shall say, &c.  
*disseres*  
*disser, &c.*

## Infinitive.

*dizer* to say.

## Gerund.

*dizendo* saying.

## Participles.

*ditto, ditto* said.

Observe,



Observe, that the compounds *desdizer*, to unsay, and *contradizer*, to contradict, are in all points conjugated like *dizer*.

*The Conjugation of the irregular Verb querer, to be willing.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.

<i>quero</i>	I will, or am willing
<i>quieres</i>	thou art willing
<i>quiere</i>	he is willing, &c.
<i>queremos</i>	
<i>queréis</i>	
<i>querem.</i>	

Imperfect.

<i>queria</i>	I was willing, &c.
<i>quierias, &amp;c.</i>	

Preterperfect definite.

<i>quize</i>	I have been willing, &c.
<i>quizeste</i>	
<i>quize</i>	
<i>quizeamos</i>	
<i>quizestes</i>	
<i>quizerão.</i>	

Future.

<i>quererei</i>	I shall be willing, &c.
<i>quererás, &amp;c.</i>	

Imperative.

<i>queiras tu</i>	be thou willing
<i>queira elle</i>	let him be willing
<i>queiramos nos</i>	let us be willing
<i>queirais vos</i>	be you willing
<i>queirão elles</i>	let them be willing.

Optative and Subjunctive.

<i>que eu queira</i>	that I may be willing, &c.
<i>queiras, &amp;c.</i>	



## Imperfect.

<i>que eu quizéra</i> or <i>quizéſſe</i>	that I were willing
<i>quizéras</i> or <i>quizéſſes</i>	thou wert willing
<i>quizéra</i> or <i>quizéſſe</i>	he were willing
<i>quizéramos</i> or <i>quizéſſemos</i>	we were willing
<i>quizéreis</i> or <i>quizéſſeis</i>	you were willing
<i>quizéraõ</i> or <i>quizéſſem</i>	they were willing

## Second Imperfect.

<i>eu quererá</i>	I should or would be willing, &c.
<i>quererías, &amp;c.</i>	

## Future.

<i>quando eu quizer</i>	when I shall be willing, &c.
<i>quizeres, &amp;c.</i>	

## Infinitive.

<i>querer</i>	to be willing.
---------------	----------------

## Gerunds.

<i>querendo</i>	being willing.
-----------------	----------------

## Participle.

<i>querido</i>	been willing.
----------------	---------------

Note, that *quer* is sometimes a conjunction, when repeated in a sentence, and then it is to be rendered into English by *together* and *or*; as, *quer vos o tenhais feito, quer naõ*, whether you have done that or no. But when it is not repeated, and is joined to the participle *ſe*, is sometimes rendered into English by *at least*; as, *hum ſe quer*, one at least; and sometimes by *however*, when joined to the participle *que*; as, *como quer que ſeja*, however it be. In all which cases, it is not to be confounded with the third person singular of the indicative of the verb *querer*.

Take notice that the verb *querer* is sometimes used with the particle *ſe* instead of the verb *dever*; as, *as cousas naõ ſe querem feitas à preſſa*, things must not be done in a hurry.



*Of the irregular Verb valer, to be worth.*

I shall put no more tenses of this verb than the present indicative, the imperative, and the present subjunctive, none but these being irregular.

## Indicative Mood.

## Present.

<i>valho</i>	I am worth, &c.
<i>vales</i>	
<i>vale, or val</i>	
<i>valemos</i>	
<i>valeis</i>	
<i>valem.</i>	

## Imperative.

<i>vale tu</i>	be thou worth
<i>valha elle</i>	let him be worth
<i>valhamos nos</i>	let us be worth
<i>valei vos</i>	be you worth
<i>valhaõ elles</i>	let them be worth.

## Subjunctive.

<i>que eu valha</i>	that I may be worth, &c.
<i>valhas</i>	
<i>valha</i>	
<i>valhamos</i>	
<i>valhais</i>	
<i>valhaõ.</i>	

*Of the irregular Verb perder, to lose.*

This verb changes the *c* before *o* of the present indicative into *d* in the other persons of the same tense, as well as in the other tenses, if you except the imperative and present subjunctive; in which it is conjugated in the following manner:

## Indicative.

## Present.

<i>perco</i>	I lose, &c.	<i>perdemos</i>
<i>perdes</i>		<i>perdeis</i>
<i>perde</i>		<i>perdem.</i>



## Imperative.

<i>perde tu</i>	lose thou
<i>perca elle</i>	let him lose
<i>percámos nos</i>	let us lose
<i>perdei vos</i>	lose you
<i>percaõ elles</i>	let them lose.

## Subjunctive.

<i>que eu perca</i>	that I may lose, &c.
<i>percas</i>	
<i>perca, &amp;c.</i>	

The compounds of the verb *ter*, as *contenho*, I contain; *detenho*, I detain, &c. are conjugated like it.

Some verbs of this conjugation are only irregulars in the participle passive; as, *escrito*, from *escrever*; *absolto*, from *absolver*.

Those that have the *j* before *o* in the present indicative change the *j* into *g* in all tenses and persons, in which the *j* would otherwise meet with the vowels *i* or *e*; as, *eleger*, to elect; *eu elejo*, *tu eleges*, &c. I elect, &c.

Imperfect.

*elegia, &c.*

Preter-def.

*elegi, elegeste, &c.* I elected, &c.

The verbs ending in *eyo* in the present indicative, change that termination into *ia* in the imperfect, and into *i* in the preter-definite, and are so conjugated.

## Indicative.

Present.

<i>eu leyo</i>	I read, &c.	<i>lemos</i>
<i>les</i>		<i>ledes</i>
<i>le</i>		<i>lem.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>eu lia</i>	I did read, &c.
<i>lias, &amp;c.</i>	

Preter-



Preter definite.

*eu li* I read, &c.  
*leste, &c.*

Imperative.

		<i>leamos nos</i>	let us read
<i>le tu</i>	read thou	<i>lede vos</i>	read you
<i>lea elle</i>	let him read	<i>leaõ elles</i>	lead them read.

Subjunctive.

*que eu lea* that I may read, &c.  
*leas*  
*lea, &c.*

You may observe, that they lose the *y* through all the other moods and tenses. The verb *crer*, to believe, ought to be conjugated in the same manner.

*Of the irregular Verbs in ir.*

*Ir*, to go.

Indicative Mood.

Present tense.

<i>vou</i>	I go	<i>vamos</i>	we go
<i>vás</i>	thou goest	<i>ides</i>	you go
<i>vay</i>	he goes	<i>vaõ</i>	they go.

Preterimperfect.

<i>hía</i>	I did go, &c.	<i>híamos</i>
<i>hías</i>		<i>híeis</i>
<i>hía</i>		<i>híaõ.</i>

Preterperfect definite.

<i>fui</i>	I went	<i>fomos</i>	we went
<i>foste</i>	thou wentest	<i>fostes</i>	you went
<i>fôu</i>	he went	<i>fôraõ</i>	they went.

Preterperfect.

<i>tenho</i>	} <i>ido</i> {	I have gone, &c.
<i>tens, &amp;c.</i>		

## Preterpluperfect.

*tinha*  
*tinhas, &c.* } *ido* { I had gone, &c.

## Future.

*irei* I shall or will go, &c.  
*iras, &c.*

## Imperative.

<i>vay tu</i>	go thou	<i>vamos nos</i>	let us go
<i>va elle</i>	let him go	<i>ide vos</i>	go you
		<i>vaõ elles</i>	let them go.

## Optative and Subjunctive.

*que eu va* that I may go, &c.  
*vas*  
*va*  
*vamos*  
*vades*  
*vaõ.*

## First Preterimperfect.

*que eu fora or fosse* that I might go, &c.  
*foras or fosses*  
*fora or fosse*  
*fóramos or fossemos*  
*foreis or fosseis*  
*foraõ or fosse.*

## Second Preterimperfect.

*iria* I should go, &c.  
*irias, &c.*

## Preterperfect.

It is composed of the participle *ido* and the present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

## Peterpluperfect.

It is composed of the participle *ido* and the first preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.



Second Peterpluperfect.

It is composed of the participle *ido* and the second preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

Future.

<i>quando eu for</i>	when I shall go, &c.
<i>fores</i>	
<i>for</i>	
<i>formos</i>	
<i>fordes</i>	
<i>forem.</i>	

Second Future.

<i>quando eu tiver</i>	} <i>ido</i> {	when I shall have gone, &c.
<i>tivers, &amp;c.</i>		

Infinitive.

Present.

<i>ir</i>	to go.
-----------	--------

Gerund.

<i>indo</i>	going.
-------------	--------

Part.

<i>ido</i>	gone.
------------	-------

*Vir*, to come.

Indicative.

Present.

<i>venho</i> , I come, &c.	<i>vimos</i>
<i>vens</i>	<i>vindes</i>
<i>vem</i>	<i>vem.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>vinha</i> I did come, &c.	<i>vinhamos</i>
<i>vinhas</i>	<i>vinheis</i>
<i>vinha</i>	<i>vinhaõ.</i>

Preter definite.

<i>vim</i> I came, &c.	<i>viémos</i>
<i>vieste</i>	<i>viésteis</i>
<i>veyo</i>	<i>vieraõ.</i>

Preter-

## Preterperfect.

*tenho vindo* I have come, &c.  
*tens vindo*, &c.

## Future.

*virai* I shall come, &c.  
*viras*, &c.

## Imperative.

		<i>venhamos</i>	let us come
<i>vem tu</i>	come thou	<i>vinde vos</i>	come you
<i>venha elle</i>	let him come	<i>venhaõ elles</i>	let them come.

## Optative.

## Present.

*que eu venha.*

## Imperfect.

*que eu viesse, or viesse.*

## Second Imperfect.

*viria, virias, &c.*

## Infinitive.

## Present.

*vir* to come.

## Gerund.

*vindo* coming.

## Part.

*vindo* come.

The compounds of *vir*; as, *convir*, to be convenient; *sobrevir*, to come unlooked-for, are conjugated in the same manner.

Of the irregular Verbs *mentir*, to lie; *sentir*, to feel; *servir*, to serve; *ferir*, to wound.

These verbs change the *i* of the first person singular of the present tense, indicative, into *e* in the other



other persons of the same tense, as well as in the other tenses and moods, except the imperative and the present conjunctive, in which they are conjugated thus ;

Indicative.

Present.

<i>eu minto</i>	<i>tu mentes</i>	<i>elle mente, &amp;c.</i>
<i>eu sinto</i>	<i>tu sentes</i>	<i>elle sente, &amp;c.</i>
<i>eu sirvo</i>	<i>tu serves</i>	<i>elle serve, &amp;c.</i>

Imperative.

<i>mente tu</i>	<i>menta elle</i>	<i>mintamos nos</i>	<i>mentâ vos</i>	<i>mentaõ elles</i>
<i>sente tu</i>	<i>sinta elle</i>	<i>sintamos nos</i>	<i>sentâ vos</i>	<i>sintaõ elles</i>
<i>serve tu</i>	<i>sirva elle</i>	<i>sirvamos nos</i>	<i>servi vos</i>	<i>sirvaõ elles.</i>

Subjunctive.

<i>menta,</i>	<i>mentas, &amp;c.</i>
<i>sinta,</i>	<i>sintas, &amp;c.</i>
<i>sirva,</i>	<i>sirvas, &amp;c.</i>

The compounds, *desmentir*, *assentir*, *consentir*, *dis-sentir*, *presentir*, are conjugated like *mentir* and *sentir* ; and also the verbs *affecir*, *referir*, *conferir*, *deserir*, *differir*, *inferir*.

Of the irregular Verbs *affligir*, to afflict ; *corrigir*, to correct ; *fingir*, to feign ; *ungir*, to anoint ; *compungir*, *frigir*, *dirigir*, *tingir*, *cingir*, &c.

These verbs change the *g* of the infinite mood into *j* in those tenses where the *g* would otherwise meet with the vowels *o*, as in the first person singular of the present indicative, *afflijo* ; or *a*, as in the third person of the imperative in both numbers, in the first plural of the same tense, and in the present subjunctive.

Of the irregular Verb *seguir*, to follow.

This verb changes the *e* of the infinite mood into *i* in the first person singular of the present indicative,



cative, *eu siga*, I follow ; in the present subjunctive, *que eu siga*, that I may follow ; and in the imperative, where it is conjugated thus : *segue tu, siga elle, sigamos nos, segui vos, sigaõ elles*.

Take notice that the *u* is lost in those tenses where it would otherwise meet with the vowels *o* and *a*, as you see in the examples ; and this observation also takes place in the verbs *distinguir*, to distinguish ; *extinguir*, to extinguish ; &c.

The compounds are *perseguir*, to persecute ; *conseguir*, to obtain ; *perseguir*, to pursue.

*Of the irregular Verb ouvir, to hear.*

This verb changes the *v* of the infinite mood into *ç* in the first person singular of the present indicative, *eu ouço*, I hear, *tu ouves*, &c. in the present subjunctive, and in the imperative mood, where it is conjugated thus : *ouve tu, ouça elle, ouçamos nos, ouvê vos, ouçaõ elles*, hear thou, &c.

*Of the irregular Verb dormir, to sleep.*

This verb changes the *o* of the infinitive mood into *u* in the first person singular of the present indicative, thus : *eu durmo*, *tu dormes*, *elle dorme*, &c. I sleep, &c. In the present subjunctive, *que eu durma*, &c. that I may sleep ; and in the imperative mood, where it is conjugated thus : *dorme tu, durma elle, durmamos nós, dormê vós, durmaõ elles*, sleep thou, &c.

*Of the irregular Verb fugir, to fly away.*

This verb is irregular in the present indicative, and is thus conjugated : *fujo*, *foges*, *foge*, *fugimos*, *fugis*, *fogem*, I run away, &c. It is also irregular in the imperative mood, where it is conjugated thus : *foge tu*, *fuja elle*, *fujamos nós*, *fugê vós*, *fujão elles*. Finally, it is irregular in the present subjunctive ; *que eu fuja*, *fujas*, &c.

It



It keeps the *u* in all other tenses and moods, as also the *g*.

The verb *surgir*, to arrive, or to come to an anchor, has the same irregularity, and makes *surto* in the participle passive.

The verbs *subir*, *cubrir*, *encubrir*, *descubrir*, *acudir*, *bullir*, *sumir*, *consumir*, *cuspir*, *construir*, *tussir*, &c. have the same irregularity in regard to the letter *u*.

*Of the irregular Verb pedir, to ask.*

This verb is irregular in the first person singular of the present indicative and subjunctive, as well as in the imperative, in which it changes the *d* into *ç*.

Indicative.

<i>eu peço</i> , I ask, &c.	<i>nós pedimos</i>
<i>tu pedes</i>	<i>vós pedis</i>
<i>elle pede</i>	<i>elles pedem.</i>

Imperative.

<i>pede tu</i> , ask thou	<i>peçamos nós</i> , let us ask
<i>peça elle</i> , let him ask	<i>pedi vós</i> , ask you
	<i>peçaõ elles.</i> let them ask.

Subjunctive.

<i>que eu peça</i> , that I may ask, &c.	<i>peçamos</i>
<i>peças</i> ,	<i>peçais</i>
<i>peça</i>	<i>peçaõ.</i>

In like manner is conjugated the verb *medir*, to measure : *eu meço*, *tu medes*, &c.

*Of the irregular Verb vestir, to dress.*

Indicative.

Present.

<i>eu visto</i> , I dress, &c.	<i>vestimos</i>
<i>vestes</i>	<i>vestis</i>
<i>veste</i>	<i>vestem.</i>

Imperative.

## Imperative.

<i>veste tu,</i>	dress thou	<i>vistamos nos,</i>	let us dress
<i>vista elle,</i>	let him dress	<i>vesti vos,</i>	dress you
		<i>vistaõ elles,</i>	let them dress.

## Subjunctive.

## Present.

<i>que eu vista</i>	that I may dress, &c.	<i>vistamos</i>
<i>vistas</i>		<i>vistas</i>
<i>vista</i>		<i>vistaõ.</i>

In all other tenses and moods it keeps the letter *e*; and in like manner is conjugated the verb *despir*.

*Of the irregular Verb sortir, to furnish, or stock.*

*Feyjo* says, that the *o* of this verb is to be changed into *u*, in those tenses where the *t* is followed by *e* or *a*, and that is to be kept, when the *t* is followed by *i*; but in the *Fabula dos Planetas* we read, *surtio effeyto*, it took effect; and in *Andrade 2. Part. Apologet.* we read, *naõ sortiraõ effeyto*, where the Verb *sortiraõ* is in the same tense, viz. in the preterperfect definite; therefore nothing can be determined about the irregularity of this verb.

*Of the irregular Verb carpir, to weep.*

This verb is defective, and is only used in those tenses and persons where the *p* is followed by *i*; as *carpimos, carpis*, we weep, you weep. Preterimperfect, *carpia, carpias*, &c. I did weep, &c.

*Of the irregular Verb parir, to bring forth young as any female doth.*

## Indicative Mood.

## Present.

<i>eu paio,</i>	I bring forth, &c.	<i>parimos</i>
<i>pares</i>		<i>paris</i>
<i>pare</i>		<i>parem.</i>

## Imperfect.

*paria, &c.*

## Imperative



Imperative Mood.

*páre tu*, bring thou forth, &c. *pairamos*  
*paira ella* *pári*  
*pairaõ.*

Subjunctive.

Present.

*que eu paira*, that I may, &c. *pairámos*  
*páiras* *pairáes*  
*páira* *pairaõ.*

*Of the irregular Verb repetir, to repeat.*

Indicative.

Present.

*repito*, I repeat, &c. *repetimos*  
*repêtes* *repetís*  
*repête* *repetem.*

Imperfect.

*repetia*, *repetias*, &c.

Preterperfect definite:

*repeti*, *repetiste*, &c.

Imperative.

*repete tu*, repeat thou, &c. *repetamos*, &c.  
*repetita elle*,

Subjunctive.

Present.

*que eu repita*, that I may repeat, &c.  
*repitas*, &c.

Imperfect.

*repetira* or *repetisse*, that I might repeat.

*Of the irregular Verbs sair, to go out, and cair, to fall.*

Indicative.

Present.

*sayo*, I go out, &c. *sahimos*  
*sahes* *sahís*  
*sáhe* *sahem.*

Preterimperfect.

*sahia*, *sahias*, &c.

Preter-

## Præterperfect definite.

*sabi, sabiste, &c.*

## Imperative.

<i>sabe tu</i>	<i>sabamos nós</i>
<i>saya elle</i>	<i>sabi vós</i>
	<i>sayaõ elles.</i>

## Subjunctive.

*que eu saya, sayas, &c.*

This is the common way of writing the irregular tenses of the verb *sabir* as well as of the verb *cabir*, viz. *eu cayo, tu cabes, &c.* I fall, &c. according to *Feyjo*.

*Of the irregular Verb, ordir, to warp in a loom.*

*Feyjo* says that this verb changes the *o* into *u*, in those persons where it would otherwise meet with syllables *da, de, do*.

*Of the irregular Verb advertir, to warn.*

*Advertir* is irregular in the following tenses, only by changing *vir* into *ver*.

## Indicative.

## Present.

<i>advirto,</i>	<i>I warn, &amp;c.</i>	<i>advertimos</i>
<i>advértés,</i>		<i>advertís</i>
<i>advérte</i>		<i>advertem.</i>

## Imperative.

<i>advérte tu,</i>	<i>warn thou, &amp;c.</i>	<i>advirtâmos nós</i>
<i>advirta elle</i>		<i>adverti vós</i>
		<i>advirtaõ elles.</i>

## Subjunctive.

## Present.

<i>que eu advirta,</i>	<i>that I may warn, &amp;c.</i>	<i>advirtâmos</i>
<i>advirtas</i>		<i>advirtáis</i>
<i>advirta</i>		<i>advirtaõ.</i>

The



*The Conjugation of the irregular Verb por, to place.*

Indicative.

Present:

<i>ponho,</i>	I put, &c.	<i>ponho</i>
<i>poēs</i>		<i>pondes</i>
<i>põem</i>		<i>põem.</i>

Preterimperfect.

<i>punha,</i>	I did put	<i>púnhamos</i>
<i>punhas</i>		<i>púnheis</i>
<i>punha</i>		<i>punhaõ.</i>

Preterperfect definite.

<i>pús,</i>	I put, &c.	<i>pusemos</i>
<i>puseste</i>		<i>pusestes</i>
<i>pos</i>		<i>puseraõ.</i>

Preterperfect.

It is composed of the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *ter*, and the participle *posto*.

Preterpluperfect.

It is composed of the participle *posto*, and the imperfect of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

Future.

<i>porei,</i>	I shall or will put, &c.	<i>poremos</i>
<i>porás</i>		<i>poreis</i>
<i>porá</i>		<i>poraõ.</i>

Imperative.

<i>põem tu,</i>	put thou, &c.	<i>ponhamos nós</i>
<i>ponha elle</i>		<i>ponde vós</i>
		<i>ponhaõ elles.</i>

Optative and Subjunctive.

Present.

<i>que eu ponha,</i>	that I may put, &c.
<i>ponhas, &amp;c.</i>	

First Preterimperfect.

<i>que eu púsêra or puseſſe,</i>	that I might put, &c.
<i>puseras or puseſſes, &amp;c.</i>	

H

Second

## Second Preterimperfect.

*eu poria,* I should put, &c.  
*porias,* &c.

## Preterperfect.

It is composed of the participle *posto*, and the present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

## Preterpluperfect.

It is composed of the participle *posto*, and the first preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

## Second Preterpluperfect.

It is composed of the participle *posto*, and the second preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

## Future.

*quando eu puser,* when I shall put, &c.  
*puseres,* &c.

## Second Future.

It is composed of the participle *posto*, and the future subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

## Infinitive.

## Present.

*pôr,* to put.

## Gerund.

*pondo,* putting.

## Participle passive.

*posto,* put.

After the same manner are conjugated the verbs derived from *por*; as *compor*, to compose; *dispor*, to dispose; *propor*, to propose, &c.

Some verbs are only irregular in the participle passive; as *aberto*, from *abrir*; *escrito*, from *escrever*, &c.

## Of Verbs Neuter.

Verbs neuter are those which make a complete sense of themselves, and do not govern any case after

*ter*



ter them, like the verbs active ; as *dormir*, to sleep ; *andar*, to go ; *tremar*, to tremble ; &c. But you must take notice that we meet with some verbs neuter which may govern an accusative ; as *dormir bem sono profundo*, to sleep soundly ; *eu fui andando meu caminho, e não disse huma palavra*, I went my way, and said not a word. We may also say, that the verbs neuter are those which, in their compound tenses, are seldom or never conjugated with the verb *ser*, to be ; as, I sleep, I tremble, I speak, &c. We may indeed say, *eu tenho dormido*, I have slept ; *eu tenho tremido*, I have trembled ; but not, I am slept, &c. I said *seldom*, because sometimes the verbs neuter may be conjugated with the verb *ser* ; as, *ser bem fallado*, to have a good name.

It is necessary to be acquainted with the nature of a verb neuter, to avoid mistakes in the participles, as may be seen in the Syntax of Participles.

*Of the Reciprocal Verbs, which by some are called Passive Neuter.*

The name of Reciprocal Verbs is given to such as return the sense backward, and are conjugated through all their tenses with the pronouns conjunctive *me*, *te* *se*, &c.

E X A M P L E.

Indicative. Present.

*eu me arrependo,* I repent, &c.  
*tu te arrependes*  
*elle se arrepende, &c.*

Imperfect.

*eu me arrependia, &c.* I did repent, &c.

and so of the rest.

Yet we are to take notice that the pronouns conjunctive *me*, *te*, &c. may be placed either before or after the verb, in the indicative, and consequently we may say, *eu me lembro*, or *eu lembro me*, I re-



member ; *me lembrei*, or *lembrei-me*, I remembered, &c. But in the imperative they ought to be placed after the verb, as in the following

### EXAMPLE.

<i>lembra-te tu</i> ,	remember thou, &c.	<i>lembremo-nos nós</i>
<i>lembre-se elle</i>		<i>lembrai-vos vós</i>
		<i>lembrem-se elles.</i>

In which example you must observe also, that the first person plural, which in the other verbs is like the first person plural of the present subjunctive, has the last consonant, *s*, cut off ; and so from *lembremos* we cut off the *s* to make *lembremo-nos* ; and from *arrepandamos* we make *arrependamo-nos*, &c. In regard to the infinitive, we may say, *be necessario arrepender-se dos peccados*, it is necessary to repent sins ; *be necessario lembrar-se*, it is necessary to remember ; and not *se arrepender*, or *se lembrar*. In like manner we may say *lembrando-me*, remembering, and not *me lembrando*. Yet you must take notice that the present infinitive may be preceded by the particle *para*, (which forms the Portuguese supine) and then the pronoun conjunctive may be placed either before or after it ; and so we may say, *para, lembrar-se*, or *para se lembrar*, to remember, or in order to remember.

As for the subjunctive mood, you must put the pronoun conjunctive before the present ; but you must carefully observe, that the pronouns conjunctive must be placed before it when preceded by the particles *se*, if, *que*, that ; and so you may say, *que eu me lembra se*, *se eu me lembra-se*, that I might remember, &c. but not *que eu lembrasse-me*, &c. But when the first preterimperfect is not preceded by any particle, then you must place the pronoun conjunctive after it ; as, *arrependerame eu disso*, I wish I was repented of it.

In the second preterimperfect we may place the pronouns conjunctive either before or after it, therefore



fore you may say *arrependeria me se*, &c. or *eu me arrependeria se*, &c. I should repent if, &c.

In the future you must always place the pronouns conjunctive before it; and so we may say, *quando eu me lembrar*, when I shall remember; but not *quando eu lembrar-me*.

Note, all the verbs active may become reciprocals.

EXAMPLE.

*eu me amo*, I love myself  
*tu te amas*, thou lovest thyself  
*elle se ama*, he loves himself  
*nos nos amamos*, we love ourselves, &c.

*The Conjugation of the reciprocal Verb ir-se, to go away.*

Indicative.

Present.

*eu me vou*, I go away  
*tu te vas*, &c. thou goest away, &c.

Preterimperfect.

*eu me hia*, I did go away  
*tu te hias*, &c. thou didst go away, &c.

Preterperfect definite.

*eu me fui*, I went away  
*tu te foste*, &c. thou wentest away, &c.

Preterperfect.

*eu me tenho ido*, I am gone away, or I have been gone away  
*tu te tens ido*, &c. thou hast been gone away, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

*eu me tinha ido*, I was gone away, or I had been gone away  
*tute tinhas ido*, &c. thou hadst been gone away, &c.

Future.

*eu me irei*, I shall or will go away  
*tu te iras*, &c. thou shalt go away, &c.

Imperative.

*vai-te*, go thou away  
*va-se*, let him go away  
*vamo-nos*, let us go away  
*ide-vos*, go away, get away, or get you gone.  
*vaõ-se*, let them go away.

## Subjunctive.

## Present.

<i>que eu me va</i>	that I may go away
<i>que tu te vas, &amp;c.</i>	that thou mayest go away, &c.

## First Preterimperfect.

<i>eu me fora, or me fosse</i>	I went away
<i>te foras, or te fosses, &amp;c.</i>	thou wentest away, &c.

## Second Preterimperfect.

<i>eu me iria</i>	I would, &c. go away
<i>tu te irias</i>	thou wouldst, &c.

## Preterperfect.

<i>que eu me tenha ido</i>	that I have gone away, &c.
----------------------------	----------------------------

## Preterpluperfect.

<i>que eu me tivera, or me tivesse ido</i>	that I had gone away.
--	-----------------------

## Second Preterpluperfect.

<i>eu me teria ido</i>	I should have gone away, &c.
------------------------	------------------------------

## Future.

<i>quando eu me for</i>	when I shall go away, &c.
-------------------------	---------------------------

## Second Future.

<i>quando eu me tiver ido</i>	when I shall have gone away, &c.
-------------------------------	----------------------------------

## Infinitive.

## Present.

<i>ir-se</i>	to go away.
--------------	-------------

## Preterperfect.

<i>ter-se ido</i>	to have gone away.
-------------------	--------------------

## Participles.

## Present,

<i>que se vai</i>	that is going away.
-------------------	---------------------

## Preterit.



Preterit.

*ido* gone away.

Future.

*que ha de ir-se* that is to go away.

Gerunds.

*indo-se* going away.  
*tendo-se ido* having gone away.

Supine.

*para ir-se* to go, or in order to go away,

You must observe, that in the compound tenses the pronouns *me*, *te*, &c. are placed before the auxiliary verb.

2dly, This verb is also said of vessels to signify their being leaky ; as, *vai-se a cuba*, the tub leaks. It is also used before the gerunds ; as, *o inverno vai-se acabando*, the winter is drawing towards an end ; *elles vão-se preparando*, they are preparing themselves : in which examples and in the like the verb is to be rendered into English by the verb *to be* itself, and without addition of the adverb *away* ; and sometimes it is placed before the present infinitive ; as, *ir-se deitar*, to go to bed.

*Of the reciprocal Verb vir-se, to come away.*

This verb is to be conjugated like the verb *vir* ; but you must place the pronouns conjunctive, *me*, *te*, &c. according to the observations we have made above.

*Of the reciprocal Verb avir-se, to agree.*

This is a compound verb, which is to be conjugated by putting the particle *a* before the verb *vir* in all its tenses and moods ; but you must always

make use of the observations already made about the pronouns conjunctive; and the same care must be had with the reciprocal verb *haver-se*, to behave; in the conjugation of which, you have nothing to do but to add the pronouns conjunctive to the verb *haver*.

### Impersonal Verbs.

There are three sorts of verbs impersonal, which have only the third person singular.

The first are properly impersonals of themselves; as,

*succede*, it happens  
*basta*, it is enough, or it suffices  
*chove*, it rains  
*troveja*, it thunders.

The second are derived from verbs active, followed by the particle *se*, which renders them impersonals; as, *ama-se*, they love; *diz-se*, they say; *nota-se*, it is noted. They are also called passive impersonals.

The third, which have a great affinity with reciprocal verbs, are conjugated with the pronouns conjunctive, *me*, *te*, *lhe*, *nos*, *vos*, *lhes*; as, *doe-me*, *doe-te*, *doe-lhe*, &c.

The impersonal verbs of themselves are,

*convem*, it is convenient  
*succede*, it happens, or it falls out  
*está me bem*, it becomes me  
*basta*, it is enough  
*ha-se*, it is necessary  
*chovisca*, it misles  
*chove*, or *cahe pedra*, it hails  
*gea*, it freezes  
*neva*, it snows  
*fuzila*, or *relampaguea*, it lightens  
*importa*, it matters, it concerns  
*parece*, it seems

and



and the like, which are conjugated with the third person singular of each tense; as,

Indicative.

Present.

*chove* it rains.

Imperfect.

*chovia* it did rain.

Preterperfect definite.

*choveo* it rained.

Preterperfect.

*tem chovido* it has rained.

Preterpluperfect.

*tinha chovido* it had rained.

Future.

*chovera* it shall or will rain.

Imperative.

*chova* let it rain.

Optative and Subjunctive.

Present.

*que chova* that it may rain.

Imperfect.

*que chovera or chovesse* that it might rain.

Second Imperfect.

*choveria* it should rain.

Future.

*quando chover* when it shall rain.

Second Future.

*quando tiver chovido* when it shall have rained.

Infinitive.

*chover* to rain.

The

The particle *se*, which composes the second sort of impersonal verbs, may be placed either before or after them; as, *diz-se*, they say; *sabe-se*, it is known; *sabia-se*, it was known; *logo se soube*, it was immediately known; *se diz*, it is said, &c. but sometimes they make no use of the particle *se*, and only put the verb in the third person plural; as, *dizem*, instead of *se diz*, they say.

In like manner all the verbs active may become impersonal.

In regard to these verbs, take notice, that when the noun that follows them is in the singular number, you must put the verb in the singular; if the noun be in the plural; you put the verb in the plural.

#### EXAMPLE.

*Louva-se o capitão*, they praise the captain.

*Louvaõ-se os capitães*, they praise the captains.

*Ve-se hum homem*, they see a man.

*Vem-se homens*, they see men.

When *lhe* is used after the *se*, then *lhe* is to be rendered into English by *his* or *her*; as, *louva-se-lhe o valor*, they praise his or her courage.

The third sort of impersonal verbs are such as are conjugated with the pronouns personal, *me*, *te*, *lhe*, &c. with the third person singular.

#### EXAMPLE.

##### Indicative.

##### Present.

*desagrada-me*

I am displeased, or it displeases me

*desagrada-te*

thou art displeased

*desagrada-lhe*

he or she is displeased

*desagrada-nos*

we are displeased

*desagrada-vos*

you are displeased

*desagrada-lhes*

they are displeased.

##### Imperfect.

*desagradava-me*

I was displeased.

Preter-



Preterperfect definite.

*desagrado-me* I was displeased.

Future.

*desagradar-me-ha* I shall be displeased.

Optative.

*que me desagrade* that I may be displeased.

Imperfect.

*que me desagradara or me desagradasse* that I were displeased.

Second Imperfect.

*desagradar-me-hia* I should be displeased.

Conjugate after the same manner,

*succede-me*, it happens to me  
*doe-me*, it grieves, or it pains me  
*parece-me*, it seems to me  
*he-me preciso*, it behoves me  
*agrada-me*, it pleases me  
*lembro-me*, I remember.

Many of those impersonal verbs have the third person singular and plural ; as,

*doe me a péna*, my leg pains me  
*doem me os olhos*, I have sore eyes  
*a vosso vestido parece-me novo*, your coat appears new to me  
*os vossos sapatos me parecem muyto compridos*, your shoes seem to me too long.

*Of the Verb ser, to be.*

The verb *ser* is also used as an impersonal, as it appears in the following examples: *he tempo de levantar-se*, it is time to get up ; *era tempo de hir*, it was time to go, &c. and particularly when it is conjugated with the adjectives *preciso* or *necessario* ; as, *he preciso or necessario fazer isto*, this must be done ; *era preciso or necessario escrever*, it was necessary to write ; *eu iria se fosse preciso*, I would go, if it should be necessary ;



cessary; *be preciso que eu va*, I must go; *be preciso que eu leya*, I must read; *be preciso que elle coma*, he must eat; *seria preciso que eu fosse*, I should go. You see by the last examples, that when the verb *ser* and the adjective are before the conjunctive mood, with the particle *que*, the conjunctive is rendered in English by the infinitive; but if the verb *ser* is followed by the relative or particle *que*, it must then be rendered in English in the following manner; as, *eu be que tenho feito aquillo*, 'tis I who have done that; *tu be que tens*, &c. 'tis thou who hast, &c. *elle be que tem*, &c. 'tis he who, &c. *nos be que temos*, &c. 'tis we who have, &c. *vos be que tendes*, &c. 'tis you who have, &c. *elles be que tem*, &c. 'tis they have, &c. *a ley be que o manda*, 'tis the law that prescribes it; *ella be que o cre*, 'tis she who believes it; *elles be que o fizerao?* is it they have done it? *eu be que o fiz*, 'twas I who did it; *entaõ be que eu tomo as minhas medidas*, 'tis then I take my measures; *entaõ be que eu vi*, 'twas then I saw, or only, then I saw. You may observe that *que* is not relative in the last examples, and that it is left off in English.

*Of the Verb haver, when it is impersonal.*

It is to be so conjugated.

Indicative.

Present.

*ha*, or *nam ha*, there is, or there is not, or there are, or there are not.

Imperfect.

*havia*, there was, or there were.

Preterperfect definite.

*houve*, there was, or there were.

Preter-



Preterperfect.

*tem havido* there has been, or there have been.

Preterpluperfect.

*tinha havido* there had been.

Future.

*haverá* there shall be.

Imperative.

*haja* let there be.

Optative and Subjunctive.

*que haja* that there may be.

Imperfect.

*que houvera or houvesse* that there were.

Second Imperfect.

*haveria* there would be.

Preterperfect.

*que tenha havido* that there had been.

Preterpluperfect.

*se tivesse havido* if there had been.

Future.

*quando houver* when there will or shall be.

Second Future.

*quando tiver havido* when there shall have been.

Infinitive.

*haver* there to be.

Pret.

*ter havido* there to have been.

Gerunds.

*havendo* there being  
*tendo havido* in there having been.

Those who learn Portuguese are greatly at a loss how to render the following expressions; *there is not*;  
*is*

*is there? &c. though there is nothing so easy; however, I have explained them at large in the following conjugation.*

*Conjugation of the Verb impersonal there is, ha, when it marks the place, through all its tenses.*

There is of it,	<i>ha lá disso.</i>
There is not of it,	<i>naõ ha lá disso.</i>
Is there of it?	<i>ha lá disso?</i>
Is there not of it?	<i>naõ ha lá disso?</i>
There was of it,	<i>havia lá disso.</i>
There was not of it,	<i>naõ havia lá disso.</i>
Was there of it?	<i>havia lá disso?</i>
Was there not of it?	<i>naõ havia lá disso?</i>
There was of it,	<i>houve lá disso.</i>
There was not of it,	<i>naõ houve lá disso.</i>
Was there of it?	<i>houve lá disso?</i>
Was there not of it?	<i>naõ houve lá disso?</i>
There shall be of it,	<i>havera lá disso.</i>
There shall not be of it,	<i>naõ haverá lá disso.</i>
Shall there be of it?	<i>havera lá disso?</i>
Shall there not be of it?	<i>naõ haverá lá disso?</i>
That there may be of it,	<i>que haja lá disso.</i>
There may not be of it,	<i>naõ haja lá disso.</i>
That there were of it,	<i>que houvera or houvesse lá disso.</i>
There were not of it,	<i>naõ houvera or houvesse lá disso.</i>
There would be of it,	<i>haveria lá disso.</i>
There would not be of it,	<i>naõ haveria lá disso.</i>
Would there not be or it?	<i>naõ haveria lá disso?</i>
If there had been of it,	<i>se tivesse havido lá disso.</i>
If there had not been of it,	<i>se naõ tivesse havido lá disso.</i>
Had there been of it?	<i>teria havida lá disso?</i>
Had there not been of it?	<i>naõ teria havido lá disso?</i>
There would have been of it,	<i>teria havido lá disso.</i>
There would not have been of it,	<i>naõ teria havido lá disso.</i>
Would there have been of it?	<i>teria havido lá disso?</i>
Would there not have been of it?	<i>naõ teria havido lá disso?</i>
When there will be of it,	<i>quando houver lá disso.</i>
When there will not be of it,	<i>quando naõ houver lá disso.</i>

When



When there will have been of it,	<i>quando tiver havido lá diſſo.</i>
When there will not have been of it,	<i>quando não tiver havido lá diſſo.</i>
Will there have been of it?	<i>terá havido lá diſſo?</i>
Will there not have been of it?	<i>não terá havido lá diſſo?</i>
For there having been too much of it,	<i>por ter havido lá demasiadamente diſſo.</i>
In there having been too little of it,	<i>tendo havido lá muyto pouco diſſo.</i>

Moſt ways of ſpeaking beginning with *ſome*, and the verb *to be*, are expreſſed in Portuguese by the impertonal *ha*; as, ſome friends are falſe, *ha amigos falſos*; ſome Chriſtians are unworthy of that name, *ha Chriſtiãos que não ſão dignos de tal nome*.

Obſerve, that *ha* comes before a ſubſtantive even of the plural number.

The impertonal *ha* is beſides uſed to denote a quantity of time, ſpace, and number; as, *ha dez annos que morreo*, he has been dead theſe ten years; or, he died ten years ago; *ha trinta milboens d'almas em França*, there are thirty millions of ſouls in France; *de Paris a Londres ha 120 legoas*, Paris is 120 leagues from London.

The queſtion of ſpace is aſked thus, *quanto ha de Paris a Londres?* how far is Paris from London?

*Of the impertonal Verb ha-ſe, it is neceſſary, or muſt.*

This verb answers to the Italian *bisogna*, and to the French *il faut*, and always requires after it the particle *de*, and the infinitive. It denotes the neceſſity of doing ſomething, and is Engliſhed by *muſt*, and ſometimes by the verb *to be*, through all its tenſes, with one of theſe words, *neceſſary*, *requiſite*, *needful*: and as it denotes the neceſſity of doing ſomething in general, without ſpecifying who *muſt*, therefore the ſubject coming before *muſt* may be either *I* or *we*, *he* or *ſhe*, or *any body*, according to the ſenſe of the ſpeech; as,

*Ha-ſe*



*Ha-se de fazer aquillo*, one, or we, or you, he, somebody must do that.

*Ha-se de bir*, I, or you, or we, or somebody must go.

Sometimes the verb coming after this impersonal, is Englished by the passive voice; as, *ba-se de fazer isto*, this must be done.

It is very often joined with *mister*; as, *ba-se de mister dinheiro para demandas*, one must have money to go to law; *ba-se de mister hum bom amigo para fazer fortuna no mundo*, to push one's fortune in the world, one must have a good friend.

As for the conjugation of this verb, you must make use of the verb *to be* with *necessary*, as I have said already.

#### EXAMPLE.

Present. *ba-se*, it is necessary. Imperfect. *havia-se*, it was necessary; and so through all the tenses and moods.

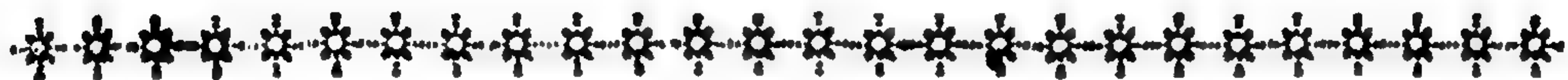
You must take notice, that sometimes the infinitive that follows the particle *de* is placed between this impersonal and its particle *se*; as, *ba de achar-se*, it will be found: and sometimes the infinitive precedes the impersonal, and this follows the particle *se*; as, *achar-se ba*, it will be found; and in this case you must not join the particle *de* to it. Observe also, that the infinitive may be also placed between the imperfect tense of this impersonal verb and its particle *se*; as, *havia de achar-se*, it was to be found; but when the infinitive precedes both the impersonal and its particle *se*, then you must put the particle *se* before the impersonal, and make use of the imperfect *hia*, and not *havia*; so you may say, *achar-se hia*, and not *achar se-havia*.



*Of the defective Verbs carpir to weep, and soer, to be wont.*

The verb *carpir* is used only in those tenses and persons where the *p* is followed by an *i*; as, *carpimos*, *carpis*, we weep, you weep. Preterimp. *carpia*, *carpias*, &c. I did weep, &c.

The verb *soer* is only used in the third persons of the present indicative of the preterimperfect of the same mood, and in the gerund; as, *elle soe*, he is wont; *elles soem*, they are wont. Imperf. *elle soia*, he was wont; *elles soiaõ*, they were wont. Gerund. *soendo*, being wont.



## CH A P. V.

### *Of the Participles.*

**T**HE participle is a tense of the infinitive, which serves to form the preterperfects and preterpluperfects of all the verbs; as, *tenho amado*, I have loved; *tinha amado*, I had loved.

*Amado* is a participle, and all the verbs in *ar* form the participle in *ado*; as, *amado*, *cantado*, &c.

*Amado* is likewise a noun adjective. Example. *Homem amado*, *mulher amada*; *livros amados*, *letras amadas*.

Some participles are frequently abridged; as, *envolto* or *envolvido*, *corrupto* or *corrompido*, *enxuto* or *exugado*; and several others, which the use of authors will point out to you.

The regular verbs ending in *er* or in *ir* form the participle in *ido*; as, *vendido*, *recebido*, *luzido*, *nutrido*, &c.



There are three sorts of participles ; namely, active, passive, and absolute.

The active participles are composed of the verb *ter* ; as, *tenho amado, tinha amado, &c.*

The passive participles are preceded by the verb *ser*, to be ; as, *sou amado, sendo louvado, &c.*

The absolute participles are of the same nature as those called *absolute* in Latin ; and you must observe, that *having* and *being* are often left out in Portuguese.

#### EXAMPLE.

*Feito isto*, having done this.

*Dito isto*, having said so.

*Acabada a cea*, after he or they have supped;

The auxiliary and participle are not always immediately joined together in compound tenses ; as, *Nos temos, com a graça de Deos, vencido os nossos inimigos*, we have, by the grace of God, overcome our enemies.



### C H A P. VI.

#### *Of the Adverbs.*

**T**HE adverb is that which gives more or less force to the verb.

The adverb has the same effect with the verb as the adjective with the substantive : it explains the accidents and circumstances of the action of the verb.

There are a great many sorts ; as adverbs of time, place, quantity, &c.

Adverbs of time ; as, at present, *presentemente* ; now, *agora* ; yesterday, *ontem* ; to-day, *hoje* ; never, *nunca* ;



*nunca* ; always, *sempre* ; in the mean time, *entretanto*.

Adverbs of place ; as, where, *onde* ; here, *aqui* ; from whence, *donde* ; there *ali* ; from hence, *d aqui* ; above, *em cima* ; below, *em baxo* ; far, *longe* ; near, *perto*.

Adverbs of quantity ; as, how much, *quanto* ; how many, *quantos* or *quantas* ; so much, *tanto* ; much, *muyto* ; little, *pouco*.

A great many adverbs are formed from adjectives, changing *o* into *amente* ; *santo*, *santamente*, holily ; *rico*, *ricamente*, richly ; *douto*, *doutamente*, learnedly.

From adjectives in *e* or *l* we likewise form adverbs by adding *mente* to them ; as,

*Constante*, *constantemente*, constantly.

*Diligente*, *diligentemente*, diligently.

*Prudente*, *prudentemente*, prudently.

*Fiel*, *fielmente*, faithfully.

In order to assist the memory of those who are learning the Portuguese language, I have here collected a large number of adverbs, which, by frequent repetition, may be easily retained, especially those terminated in *mente*.

### *A Collection of Adverbs.*

*Abundantemente*, abundantly

*Com razão*, justamente, justly

*Absolutamente*, absolutely

*A Escachapernas*, or *a cavalleiro*,  
a-straddle

*Agora*, or *por hora*, now, at  
this time

*Ia para ja*, now, immediately

*Com condicaõ*, upon condition

*De parte*, aside

*De travez*, askew, askuint ;  
as, *olhar de travez*, to look  
askew, or askuint

*Actualmente*, actually

*De proposito*, purposely

*Adeos*, farewell

*Admiravelmente*,

*Maravilhosamente*

*As mil maravilhas*

*Astutamente*, cunningly

*Atreiçoadamente*, treacherously

*De maravilha*, very seldom

*A miudo*, often

*Assim*, so

*Taõ*, so

*Apressa*, in haste

*Facilmente*, easily

*Ao avesso*, or *as avessas*, the  
wrong side outward



*De improvise, or improvisa-*  
*mente, at unawares*  
*Antigamente, anciently*  
*Quasi, pretty near, almost*  
*Então, then*  
*Desde então, since that time*  
*Desde quando? since when?*  
*De quando aca? from what*  
*time? how long?*  
*De quando en quando, now and*  
*then, ever and anon*  
*Quando bem, or ainda quando,*  
*albeit, although it should*  
*be*  
*Quando muito, at the most*  
*Quando menos, at least*  
*Ca, here, or hither*  
*La, there*  
*Ali, there, in that place*  
*Ahi, { there, expresses the*  
*place where stands*  
*the person spoken to;*  
*as, *ahi onde estas*, there*  
*where you are.*  
*Acola, there*  
*Traz, or detraz, behind*  
*Para traz, backward*  
*Isto he, to wit*  
*Em vez, instead*  
*Tambem, also*  
*Tanto que } as soon as*  
*logo que }*  
*De pensado, wilfully*  
*Acaso, by chance*  
*Fixamente, steadfastly*  
*Finalmente, finally*  
*Livrement, freely*  
*Muyto, much*  
*Depressa, quickly*  
*Aqui, here*  
*Ate aqui, as far as here, or till*  
*now, or hitherto*  
*D'aqui em diante, hencefor-*  
*ward, or hereafter*  
*Bem, well*

*A'manhãa, to-morrow*  
*A'manhãa pela manhã, to-*  
*morrow morning*  
*Despois d' a'manhãa, after to-*  
*morrow*  
*Ultimamente, lastly*  
*Como, as*  
*Como? how?*  
*Cedo, soon*  
*Tarde, late*  
*Primeiro que, before that*  
*Primeiro que tudo, before all,*  
*or in the first place*  
*Fora, abroad, out*  
*Ja, already*  
*De salto, at one jump*  
*De quando em quando, from*  
*time to time*  
*Antes, before*  
*Despois, afterwards*  
*Juntamente, together*  
*Enteiramente, entirely*  
*Ao redor, or em torno, about*  
*De balde, in vain*  
*Loucamente, madly*  
*Muyto, very*  
*Atrevidamente, boldly*  
*Felicemente, happily*  
*Vergonhosamente, shamefully*  
*Nunca, never*  
*Nunca mais, never since*  
*Logo, immediately*  
*Ainda, yet; as, *aindo não**  
*veio, he is not come yet*  
*Ainda, even; as, *seria vergon-**  
*ha ainda o fallar nisso, it*  
*were a shame even to speak*  
*of it*  
*Nem se quer, even*  
*Vilmente, basely*  
*Mal, ill*  
*Mais, more*  
*Menos, less*  
*Ate, until, or even*  
*Sim, yes*



<i>Naõ, no, not</i>	<i>Quando, when</i>
<i>Onde, where</i>	<i>Nada, nothing</i>
<i>De cór, by heart</i>	<i>Verdadeiramente, truly</i>
<i>A's vezes, sometimes, from</i>	<i>Dentro, within</i>
<i>time to time</i>	<i>Devagar, softly.</i>



## CHAPTER VII.

### *Of the Prepositions.*

**P**repositions are a part of speech indeclinable, most commonly set before a noun, or pronoun, or verb.

Every preposition requires some case after it, as you will see in the following collection :

#### Genitive.

*Antes do dia, before day-break*  
*Diante de Deos, before God*  
*Dentro da igreja, within the church*  
*Detraz do palacio, behind the palace*  
*Debaxo da mesa, under the table*  
*Em cima da mesa, upon the table*  
*Alem, besides*  
*Alem dos mares, on that side of the seas*  
*Alem disso, besides that, moreover*  
*Alem de que, idem*  
*Aquem, or daquem dos mares, on this side of the seas*  
*A o redor, or em contorno da cidade, round about the city*  
*Perto de Londres, near London*  
*Acerca daquelle negocio, concerning that affair.*  
*Fora da casa, out of the house*  
*Fora de perigo, out of danger*  
*Fora de si, out of one's wits*  
*This preposition governs also a nominative ; as, fora seu ir-*  
*maõ, except his brother, or, his brother excepted.*  
*De frente da minha casa, over-against my house*  
*De frente da igreja, facing the church*  
*Despois de cea, after supper.*

#### Dative.

*Quanto áquillo, with respect to that*  
*Pegado á muralha, close to the wall*



*Desde o bico do pe ate á cabeça,* from top to toe

Accusative.

*Perante o juiz,* before the judge

*Entre,* between, among, or amongst

*Entre os homens,* among men.

*Sobre a mesa,* upon the table

*Conforme,* or *segundo a ley,* according to the law

*Por amor de Deos,* for God's sake

*Pelo mundo,* through the world

*Pelos mares,* through the seas

*Pela rua,* through the streets

*Pelas terras,* through the lands

*Por grande que seja,* let it be never so great

*Contra ell s,* against them

*Traz o templo,* behind the temple

*Durante,* during; as, *durante o inverno,* during the winter.

We shall be more particular about prepositions when we examine their construction.



## C H A P. VIII.

### *Of the Conjunctions.*

**A** Conjunction is a part of speech indeclinable, which serves to join the members and parts of speech together, in shewing the dependency of relation and coherency between the words and sentences.

Some conjunctions are copulative, which join, and, as it were, couple two terms together; as, *e,* and: *Portugueses e Inglezes,* Portuguese and English.

Some are disjunctive, which shew a respect of separation or division; as, *nem,* nor, neither; *ou,* either, or. Example: *nem este nem aquella,* neither this nor that; *ou este ou aquella,* either this or that; *nem mais nem menos,* neither more nor less; *quer o faça quer não,* tudo para mim he o mesmo, it is all one to me whether he does it or no: *quer seja verdade quer não,* whether it be true or no; *nem se quer hum,* never a one.

The



The adverbative denote restriction, or contrariety; as, *mas*, or *porem*, but; *comtudo*, yet, however; *mas antes*, or *pello contrario*, nay.

The conjunctions conditional suppose a condition, and serve to restrain and limit what has been just said; as, *se*, if; *com condiçam que*, *com isto que*, *dado caso que*, provided that, or upon condition that, or in case that, &c.

The concessive, which shew the assent we give to a thing: as, *embora*, or *seja emora*, well and good; *está feito*, done, agreed.

The causal shew the reason of something; as *porque*, for, or because, or why.

The concluding denote a consequence drawn from what is before: as, *logo*, or *por consequencia*, therefore, then, or consequently.

The transitive, which serve to pass from one sentence to another; as, *alem disso*, moreover, or besides that; *sobre tudo*, or *em summa*, after all, upon the whole, in the main; *proposito*, now I think on't, or now we are speaking of that.

There are others of a different sort; as, *se quer*, or *ao menos*, at least; *aindaque*, although; *de sorte que*, so that; *antes quero pedir que furtar*, I'll rather ask than steal; *antes morrerrei que dizer-volo*, I'll rather die than tell you; *já que*, since, &c.

To the above mentioned parts of speech grammarians have added *Interjections*, which are particles serving to denote some passion or emotion of the mind: but there is another sort, which may be called demonstrative; as, *aqui* and *la*; Ex. *este homem aqui*, this man; *aquella mulher la*, that woman, &c. and some others continuative, because they denote continuation in the speech; as, *com effeito*, in effect; *alem disso*, besides; or *a vejamos*, now let us see; *finalmente fomos embora*, and so, sir, we went away. To which we may add those invented to imitate the sounds of dumb creatures, and the noise which is occasioned by the clashing of bodies against one another; as, *zaz*, *traz*, thwick-thwack, &c. In-



*Interjective Particles.*

## Of Joy.

*Ha, ba, ba! Ha, ha, ha!**Oh que gosto! Oh joy!*

## Of Grief.

*Ay! Alas! ah!**Ay de mim! Woe is me! lack!**Meu Deos! My God!*

## Of Pain.

*Ay! Ay!**Oh! Oh!*

## To encourage.

*Animo!**Ora vamos! } Come, come on!*

## To call.

*O, olá! Ho, hey, hip!*

## Of admiration or surprize.

*O, O la, abi! Lack-a-day!**Apree! Heyday!*

## Of aversion.

*Irra!**Nada! } Away, away with! fye!**Fora!*

For making people go out of the way, or stand away.

*Guardem-se, or arredem-se! Have a care, clear the way, or stand away!*

## For shouting.

*Viva! Huzza!*

## Of silence.

*Calai vos! Hush! Peace!*

## Of cursing and threatening.

*Ai, guai! Woe!*

## For derision.

*Ab! Ah! oh! oh! oh!*

## Of wishing.

*O provera a Deos! Would to God!**Oxala!*



*Oxala!* or *bab!* O that!  
O *se!* Would!

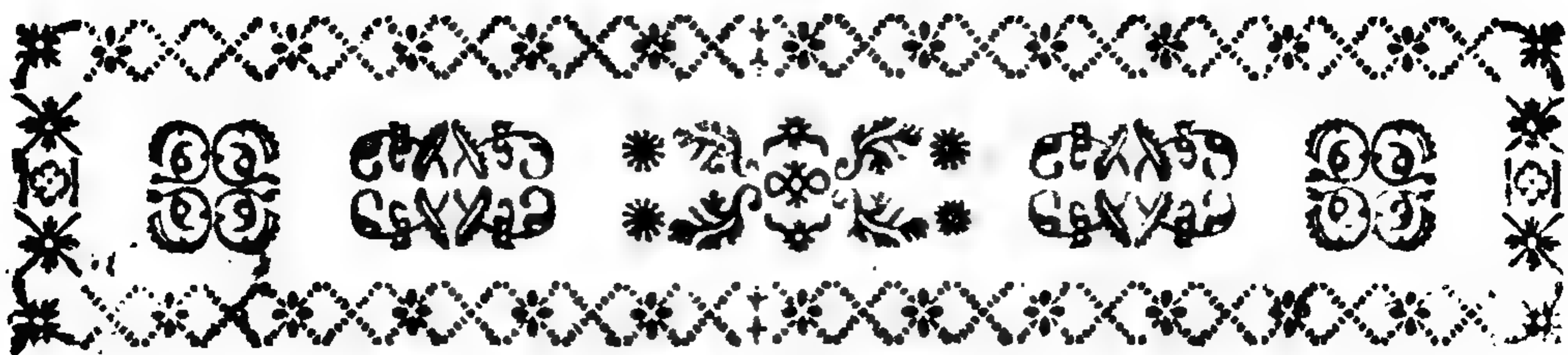
The interjection O serves for different emotions of the mind, as admiration, grief, wish, &c. and sometimes is used ironically, but differently uttered, according to the emotion which it expresses.

*Some Abbreviations used in the Portuguese Language.*

Ant <sup>o</sup>	Antonio	Anthony
Seb <sup>am</sup>	Sebastiam	Sebastian
B <sup>mo</sup> P <sup>e</sup>	Beatissimo Padre	The most blessed Father
Cap <sup>m</sup>	Capitão	Captain
Comp <sup>a</sup>	Companhia	Company
Corr <sup>o</sup>	Correa	Post
D.	Dom	Don
Dr, Dor	Doutor	Doctor
D <sup>s</sup>	Deos	God
D <sup>o</sup> , D <sup>a</sup>	Ditto, ditto	Said
Ex <sup>mo</sup> , Ex <sup>ma</sup>	Excellentissimo, ma	Most excellent
V. E.	Vossa excellencia	Your Excellence
V. S.	Vossa senhoria	Your Lordship
V. A.	Vossa alteza	Your Highness
V. M. or Vm <sup>ce</sup>	Vossa merce	You
V. P.	Vossa paternidade	Your Paternity
Vmag <sup>de</sup>	Vossa magestade	Your Majesty
S.	Santo	Saint
Fran <sup>co</sup>	Francisco	Francis
G <sup>dc</sup>	Guarde	Save
J. H. S.	Jesus	Jesus
M <sup>s</sup> a <sup>s</sup>	Multos annos	Many Years
Me	Mestre	Master
Sor, Sra	Senhor, ora	Sir, Lady
R <sup>mo</sup>	Reverendissimo	Most reverend
Pa	Para	For
Q'	Que	That
Q <sup>do</sup>	Quando	When
Q <sup>m</sup>	Quem	Who
Q <sup>to</sup>	Quanto	How much
Supp <sup>te</sup>	Supplicante	Petitioner
Gen <sup>al</sup>	General	General
Ten <sup>te</sup>	Tenente	Lieutenant
V. G.	Verbi gratia	For Example.

And many others, that must be learned by use.





A NEW  
PORTUGUESE  
GRAMMAR.



PART II.

CHAP. I.

*Of the Division of Syntax.*



SYNTAX is a Greek word, by the  
Latins called *construction*; and it sig-  
nifies the right placing and connect-  
ing of words in a sentence. It is  
divided into three sorts; the first, of  
Order, or Arrangement; the second,  
of Concordance; the third, of Government. The  
Syntax of Order, or Arrangement, is the fit disposi-  
tion of words in a sentence. The Syntax of Con-  
cordance is when the parts of speech agree with one  
another, as the substantive with the adjective, or the  
nominative with the verb. The Syntax of Govern-  
ment is when one part of speech governs another.

For



For the sake of those who, perhaps, have not a grammatical knowledge of their own language, I shall lay down some general rules of Portuguese construction.

### I. *Of the Order of Words.*

1. The nominative is that to which we attribute the action of the verb, and is generally ranged in the first place ; it may be either a noun or pronoun, as *Francisco escreve*, Francis writes ; *eu fallo*, I speak.

2. When the action of the verb is attributed to many persons or things, these all belong to the nominative, and are ranged in the first place, together with their conjunction ; as *Pedro e Paulo lem*, Peter and Paul read.

3. The adjectives belonging to the nominative substantive, to which the action of the verb is attributed, are put after the substantive and before the verb ; as, *os estudantes morigerados e diligentes estudão*, the mannerly and diligent scholars do study.

4. If the nominative has an article, this article always takes the first place.

5. Sometimes an infinitive is put for a noun, and stands for a nominative ; as, *o dormir faz bem*, sleeping does one good : and sometimes a verb with its case ; as, *he acção de humanidade ter compaixão dos afflicto*s, to have compassion on the afflicted in an act of humanity.

6. The nominative is sometimes understood ; as, *amo*, where you understand *eu* ; and so of the other persons of the verb.

7. After the nominative you put the verb ; and if there is an adverb, it is to be placed immediately after the verb, whose accidents and circumstances it explains ; as, *Pedro ama por extremo a gloria*, Peter is extremely fond of glory.

8. The cases governed by the verb are put after it ; they may be one, or many, according to the nature of the action ; as, *eu amo a Pedro*, I love Peter.



rer. *Faço presente de hum livro a Paulo*, I make a present of a book to Paul.

9. The preposition is always put before the case it governs; as, *perto de casa*, near the house.

10. The relative is always placed after the antecedent; as, *Pedro o qual estuda*, Peter who studies.

## II. Of Concordance.

1. The adjectives agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as, *homem virtuoso*, a virtuous man; *bella mulher*, a handsome woman; *sumptuosos palacios*, &c. sumptuous palaces, &c.

2. When two or more substantives singular come together, the adjective belonging to them must be put in the plural; as, *tanto o rey como a rainha montados a cavallo parecem bem*, both the king and queen look well when they ride.

3. If the substantives happen to be one in the singular and the other in the plural, or to be of different genders, the adjective common to both agrees in number and gender with the last; as, *elle tinha os olhos e a boca aberta*, or *elle tinha a boca e os olhos abertos*, his eyes and mouth were opened. *As lagoas e rios estavam congelados*, the ponds and rivers were frozen.

4. But when there be one or many words between the last noun and the adjective, that adjective (common to all) agrees with the noun masculine, though the last noun be feminine; and if the nouns are in the singular, then the adjective common shall be put in the plural number and masculine gender; as, *o rio e a lagoa estavam congelados*, the pond and river were frozen. *O trabalho, a industria, e a fortuna unidos*; pains, industry, and fortune joined together.

5. Every verb personal agrees with its nominative, expressed or understood, both in number and person.

6. The relative *qual* with the article agrees entirely with the antecedent; but without the article, and



and denoting an absolute quality, it agrees with what follows; as, *aquelle coração o qual*, &c. that heart which, &c. *Considerando quaes seriaõ as condiçoens*, &c. considering which would be the conditions, &c.

7. The question and answer always agree in every thing; as, *a que senhora pertence v<sup>me</sup>?* *elle respondeo*, *pertenço á rainha*: To what lady do you belong, sir? and he answered, I belong to the queen.

### III. *Of the Dependence of the Parts of Speech on one another.*

1. The nominative being the basis of the sentence, the verb depends on it, as the other cases depend on the verb. The adjective depends on the substantive that supports it; and the adverb on the verb whose accidents it explains.

2. The genitive depends on a substantive, expressed or understood, by which it is governed.

3. The accusative depends either on a verb active, or on a preposition.

4. The ablative depends on a preposition by which it is governed; as, *parto de Roma*, I go from Rome.

5. The dative and vocative have, strictly speaking, no dependence on the other parts: the dative is common, as it were, to all nouns and verbs; the vocative only points out the person to whom you speak.

I come now to the Constructin of the several parts of speech.



## C H A P. II.

*Of the Syntax of Articles.*

**B**EFORE we come to the syntax of the articles, remember that *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, are articles only when they precede the nouns or pronouns, but not when joined to the verbs.

Those who understand Latin will quickly perceive the difference, if they take notice that every time they render *o*, *a*, by *illum*, *illam*, *illud*; or by *eum*, *eam*, *id*; and *os*, *as*, by *illos*, *illas*, *illa*; or by *eos*, *eas*, *ea*; they are relative pronouns.

1. The article is used before the names of the species or things which can be spoken of; therefore nouns of substances, arts, sciences, plays, metals, virtues, and vices, having no article before them in English, require the article in Portuguese; as,

*O ouro e a prata não podem fazer feliz a o homem,*  
gold and silver cannot make the happiness of man.

*A virtude não he compativel com o vicio,* virtue cannot agree with vice.

*A philosophia he kuma sciencia muito nobre,* philosophy is a very noble science.

*Joguemo's as cartas,* let us play at cards.

2. The article is not placed before a substantive which is followed by the adjective of number that stands for a surname, or meets with a proper or Christian name; as, *Joseph Primeiro*, Joseph the First.

3. When a book or some part of it, as chapter, page, &c. is quoted, the adjective of number may come either before or after the substantive; but if it comes after, the two words are construed without article; as, *livro primeiro, capitulo segundo, &c.* book i. chapter ii. If the adjective of number comes



comes before the substantive, it takes the article; as, *o primeiro livro*, the first book.

4. *O* placed before *que* signifies *what* or *which*; as, *faça o que quizer*, let him do what he likes; *o que eu fiz*, which I did.

5. The article is never made use of before proper names of men, women, gods, goddesses, saints.

6. The article is not used in Portuguese before the pronouns possessive relative; as, *de quem he esta casa?* *he minha*, *he tua*, &c. whose house is this? it is mine, it is thine, &c.

7. When a mount's, mountain's, or hill's name, is preceded by the word *monte*, it takes neither article nor preposition; as, *o Monte Atlante*, Mount Atlas; *os Montes Pireneos*, the Pirenean Mountains; but after the word *serra*, a ridge of hills, it takes the article; as, *a Serra da Estrella*, Mount Strella; *Serra do Potosi*, Mount Potosi; however, they say also, *Serra Lioa*.

8. The noun of the measure, weight, and the number of the things that have been bought, requires the articles; as, *otrigo vende-se tanto o alqueire*, wheat is sold so much a peck, three quarts and one pint.

*A manteiga vende-se tanto o arratel*, butter cost so much a pound.

*Os ovos vendem-se tanto a duzia*, eggs are sold so much a dozen.

9. No article is used with proper names of persons and planets, except *a terra*, the earth; *o sol*, the sun; *a lua*, the moon.

10. When proper names are used in a determinate sense, that is, when they are applied to particular objects, then they take the article; as, *o Deus dos Christãos*, the God of Christians; *o Archimedes de Inglaterra*, the Archimedes of England. The proper names of renowned poets and painters keep also the article; as, *o Camoens*, *o Pope*, *o Tasso*, *o Ticiano*, &c.



11. The indefinite article *de* is used before nouns following one of this, *sorte*, *specie*, *genero*; and any other noun of which they express the *kind*, *character*, *quality*, and *nature*: which sort of nouns are usually Englished by an adjective, or even by the substantive itself placed adjectively, and making together, as it were, but a word compound; as, *Dor de cabeça*, the head-ach; *buma sorte de fruto*, a sort of fruit; *fallar de tolo*, a foolish speech.

Sometimes the English adjective may be made by an adjective too in Portuguese, as in the last example, *bum fallar tolo*, a foolish speech; but sometimes too the Portuguese express the English adjective by a substantive of the same signification with *de* before the other noun, though they have an adjective of the same nature as the English adjective; as, *o diabo de minha molher*, my devilish wife; and sometimes the adjective is used by them substantively, or the substantive is understood; as, *o velhaco de meu filho*, my rascally son; *a velhaca de sua may*, his or her rascally mother. Finally, they make also use of the definite article; as, *o diabo do homem* or *da molher*, the devilish man or woman; *a pobre da molher*, the poor woman, &c.

12. Nouns are used without article in the following cases.

1st. At the title of a performance, and in the middle of sentences, where they characterise in a particular manner the person or thing spoken of, in which case the English use especially the particle *a*; as,

*Discurso sobre as obrigações da religião natural*, a discourse concerning the obligations of natural religion.

*Primeira parte*, the first part.

*O conde de Clermont, principe do Sangue, morreo*, &c. the count of Clermont, a prince of the blood, died, &c.



*O S. Antonio, não de noventa peças,* the St. Anthony, a ninety gun ship.

2dly. In sentences of exclamation; as,

*As mais bellas flores são as que menos durão; qualquer chuva as desfmaia, o vento as murcha, o sol as queima, e acaba de secar; sem fallar numa infinidade de insectos que as perseguem e deitaõ a perder; natural e verdadeira imagem da belleza das senhoras!* the handsomest flowers last but a very short time; the least rain tarnishes them, the wind withers them, the sun scorches them, and completes the drying of them; without mentioning an infinite number of insects that spoil and hurt them: a natural and true image of the ladies beauty!

3dly. When they meet with a noun of number in an indefinite sense; as, *mil soldados de cavallo contra cem infantes*, a thousand horse against an hundred foot.

*Tenho lido dous poetas*, I have read two poets, that is, any pair out of all that ever existed.

But before a noun of number, in a definite sense, it would take the article; as,

*Tenho lido os dous poetas*, I have read both poets; because this plainly indicates a definite pair, of whom some mention has been made already.

*Os cem infantes que combaterão contra os mil de cavallo, que, &c.* the hundred foot who fought with the thousand horse, that, &c.

4thly. After the verb *ser*, when it signifies *to become*, and after *ser tomado por*, to be accounted; *passar por*, to pass for; as, *elle será doutor com o tempo*, he will become a doctor in time; *ella passa por marinheiro*, he passes for a sailor.

When the adjective is used substantively, then it must have the neuter Portuguese article *o* before it; as,

*O verde offende menos a vista que o vermelho*, green hurts the eye less than red.



There are also some adverbs preceded by the neutral article *o*; as the following, *o melhor que eu puder*, the best I will be able; *o menos que for possível*, the less it will be possible.

Articles are repeated in Portuguese before as many nouns (requiring the article) as there are in the sentence; as,

*O ouro, a prata, a saúde, as honras, e os deleites não podem fazer feliz a o homem que não tem ciência nem virtude*, gold, silver, health, honours, and pleasures, cannot make a man happy without wisdom and virtue.

The article *o* is put before the word *senhor*, sir, or my lord; as,

*O senhor duque*, my lord duke; *o senhor presidente*, my lord the president; *os senhores*, the gentlemen; *dos senhores*, of the gentlemen.

You must observe the same rule for the feminine article *a*, which is to be prefixed to *senhora*, my lady, or madam; as, *a senhora duquesa*, or *condessa de*, &c, my lady duchess, or countess of, &c.

The article is never used in Portuguese as it is in English, before *mais* more, or *menos* less, in the following sentences, *quanto mais vivemos, tanto mais aprendemos*, the longer we live, the more we learn; *quanto mais hum hydropico bebe, mais sede tem*, the more an hydropick drinks, the more thirsty he is; *quanto mais hum homem he pobre, quanto menos cuidados tem*, the poorer people are, the less care they have, &c.

Sometimes the English particle *to*, before infinitive, is rendered in Portuguese by the article *o*; as, *he facil o dizer, o ver*, &c. it is easy to say, to see, &c.

In a word, *the natural associators with articles* are those *common appellatives*, which denote the several genera and species of beings, or those words which, though indefinite, are yet capable, through the article, of becoming definite. Therefore *Apollonius* makes



makes it part of the pronoun's definition, to refuse coalescence with the article; and it would be absurd to say *o eu*, the I; or *o tu*, the thou; because nothing can make those pronouns more definite than they are.

N. B. When the adjective *hum*, *huma*, is used as an article in Portuguese, it respects our primary perception, and denotes individuals as unknown; but the articles *o*, *a*, respect our secondary perception, and denote individuals as known. To explain by an example: I see an object pass by, which I never saw till then; What do I say? *Ali vai hum pobre com huma barba comprida*, there goes a beggar with a long beard. The man departs and returns a week after; What do I say then? *Ali vai o pobre da barba comprida*, there goes the beggar with the long beard.



### C H A P. III.

*Of the Syntax of Nouns; and first, of the Substantives.*

**W**HEN two or more substantives come together without a comma between them, they all govern each the next in the genitive, the first governing the second, the second the third in the same case, and so on; (that is, the first is always followed by the preposition *de*, or by the article before the next noun) but that genitive can never come in Portuguese before the noun that governs it, as in English:

*A philosophia de Newton*, Newton's philosophy.

*As guardas do principe*, the prince's guards.

*A porta da casa*, the house-gate.



*Eis aqui a casa do companheiro do irmão de minha molher,* here is my wife's brother's partner's house.

When two substantives singular are the nominative of a verb, this must be put in the plural; as, *meu irmão e meu pay estão no campo*, my brother and father are in the country.

If the nominative is a collective name, the verb is always put in the singular; as, *toda a cidade assistio*, all the city was present.

### *Of the Syntax of Adjectives.*

Of adjectives, some are put before the noun, and some after; and others may be put indifferently, either before or after.

The pronouns adjective possessive, *meu, teu, seu, &c.* and adjectives of number, come before the substantive as in English. Ex. *Meu pay*, my father; *a sua casa*, their house; *duas peçoas*, two people; *o primeiro homem*, the first man.

But when the adjective of number stands for a surname, or meets with a proper or Christian name, it comes after the substantive, without the article; as, *Joaõ V.* John the fifth.

### *The following Adjectives come after the Substantive.*

1st. Verbal adjectives and participles; as, *hum homem divertido*, a comical or merry man; *hum molher estimada*, a woman esteemed.

2dly. Adjectives of names of nations; as, *hum mathematico Inglez*, an English mathematician; *hum alfaiate Francez*, a French taylor; *musica Italiana*, Italian musick.

3dly. Adjectives of colour; as, *hum vestido negro*, a black suit of cloaths; *hum capote vermelho*, a red cloak, &c.

4thly.



4thly. Adjectives of figure; as, *buma mesa redonda*, a round table; *bum campo triangular*, a triangular field, &c.

5thly. Adjectives expressing some physical or natural quality; such are, *quente*, hot; *frio*, cold; *humido*, wet; *corcovado*, bunch-backed, &c.

Most other adjectives are differently placed before or after the substantive; as, *santo*, holy; *verdadeiro*, true, &c.

If the substantive has three or more adjectives belonging to it, they must absolutely be put after it with the enclitic *e* before the last, which must likewise be observed, even when there be but two adjectives; for the Portuguese don't say, *buma desagradavel enfadonha obra*, &c. but *buma desagradavel e enfadonha*, &c. a disagreeable, tedious work.

Of adjectives, some always require after them either a noun or a verb, which they govern; as, *digno de louvor*, praise-worthy; *digno de ser amado*, worthy to be loved; *capez de ensinar*, capable to teach; and these have always the particle *de* after them.

Some will be used absolutely without being ever attended by any noun or verb; as, *prudente*, wise; *incuravel*, incurable, &c.

Others may be construed both with and without a noun, which they govern; as, *ella he buma molher insensivel*, she is a woman without any sensibility; *ella he insensivel ao amor*, she is insensible and a stranger to the passion of love.

The following adjectives, which require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive, govern the genitive case. Observe, that some of them require in English the preposition *at* or *with* before the next noun.

*Digno*, worthy: as, *elle he digno de louvor*, he is worthy of praise. This adjective is sometimes followed by *que*; as, *digna que seu nome fuisse*, &c. her name deserved to be, &c.



*Indigno*, unworthy; as, *indigno da estimação que faço delle*, unworthy of the esteem which I have for him.

*Capaz*, capable; *incapaz*, incapable; as, *capaz, ou incapaz, de servir a propria patria*, capable, or incapable to serve one's country.

*Notado*, charged; as, *notado de avareza*, charged with avarice.

*Contente*, glad; as, *estou contente do successo que elle teve*, I am glad or overjoyed at his success.

*Cançado*, tired; as, *cançado de estudar*, tired of studying.

*Dezejoso*, greedy; as, *dzejoso de gloria*, greedy of glory, &c. as likewise adjectives signifying fullness, emptiness, plenty, want, desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, or forgetting.

All adjectives signifying inclination, advantage and disadvantage, profit or disprofit, pleasure or displeasure, due submission, resistance, likeness, govern the dative case; as, *insensivel ás affrontas*, insensible of affronts; *ser inclinado a alguma cousa*, to be inclined to something; *nocivo á saude*, hurtful to health.

These adjectives signifying dimension, as, *alto*, high, tall; *largo*, wide, broad; and *comprido*, long, come after the words of the measure of magnitude, both in English and Portuguese; but they are preceded by *de* in Portuguese; as, *des pes de largo*, ten feet broad; *seis pes de comprido*, six feet long, &c. they also turn the adjective of the dimension into its substantive, with the word of the measure before; but the word of the dimension is always preceded by *de*; as, *seis pes de altura*, six feet high; *dez pes de largura*, ten feet broad.

The adjectives signifying experience, knowledge, or science, require *em*, or *no*, *na*, *nos*, *nas*, after them; as, *versado nos livros*, versed in books; *experto na medicina*, expert in medicine.

The cardinal nouns require the genitive case after them; as, *hum dos dous*, one of the two.



The ordinal nouns, as well as the collective and proportional, likewise require the genitive after them; as, *o primeiro dos reys*, the first of the kings; *uma duzia de ovos*, a dozen of eggs, &c.

*Of the Syntax of the Comparatives and Superlatives.*

The comparative is not made of the positive in Portuguese, as in Latin and English, but by adding *mais* more, or *menos* less, which govern *que*, signifying *than*; as, *o todo he mayor que a parte*, the whole is greater than the part; *o seu amante he mais bello, mais moço, e mais rico que ella*, her lover is handsomer, younger, and richer than she is; *eu acho-o agora menos bello do que quando o comprei*, I now find it less handsome than when I bought it.

The simple comparatives *mais*, and *menos*, meeting with a noun of number, are attended by *de*; as, *ainda que elle tivesse mais de cem homens*, though he had above an hundred men; *elle tem mais de vinte annos*, he is above twenty.

When the comparison is made by *so as*, *as much as*, they must all be rendered by *como*.

E X A M P L E.

*O meu livro he tão bello como o vosso*, my book is as handsome as yours; *um principe não he tão poderoso como um rey*, a prince is not so powerful as a king.

They put sometimes *muito* and *pouco* before the simple comparatives *mais* and *menos*; as, *elle he muito mais grande*, he is taller by much; *elle hé pouco mais grande*, he is taller by little, &c.



## C H A P. IV.

*Of the Syntax of Pronouns.*

**W**E have sufficiently explained the pronouns in the first part; and to avoid any further repetition, I shall only observe, that,

1st. The English make use of the verb *to be*, put impersonally through all its tenses in the third person, before the pronouns personal *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they*; it is I; it is he, &c. In Portuguese the verb *to be*, on this occasion, is not impersonal; and they express, it is I, by *sou eu*; it is thou, *es tu*; it is he, *he elle*; it is we, *somos nos*; it is ye, *sois vos*; it is she, *he ella*; it is they, masc. *são elles*; it is they, fem. *são ellas*; and in like manner through all the tenses; as, it was I, *era eu*; it was we, *eramos, nos*, &c.

2dly. The Portuguese seldom make use of the second person singular or plural, but when through a great familiarity among friends, or speaking to God, or a father and mother to their children, or to servants; thus, you are in the right of it, is expressed by *vmce tem razãõ*, instead of *tendes razãõ*; *como está vmce?* how do you do? In the plural they say *vmces*.

Observe here, that when an adjective comes after *vmce V. S. V. E. &c.* it does not agree in gender with *vmce V. S. &c.* but with the person we speak to or we speak of; therefore they speak to a lady or woman thus; *vmce he muito bella*, you are very beautiful; and to a man they say, *vmce he muito bom*, you are very good.

3dly, *Nos*, is generally used by the king, a governor, or a bishop, in their writings, and then it signifies in English *we*; as, *nos mandamos*, or *mandamos*, we command; but *nos* before or after a verb in Portuguese



Portuguese signifies *us* in English; as, *elle nos disse*, he told us; *dai-nos tempo*, give us time.

4thly, *Vós* is also applied to a single person, but only speaking to inferiors, or between familiar friends, to avoid the word thou, *tu*, which would be too gross and unmannerly.

5thly. The pronouns conjunctive are joined to verbs, and stand for the dative and accusative cases; as, *deu-me*, he gave me; *ama-me*, love me; but the pronouns personal are used instead of them when they are preceded by a preposition, and not immediately followed by a verb; as, *elle fallou contra mim*, he spoke against me.

6thly. When *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, are joined to the present infinitive mood, they change the last *r* of it into *lo*, *la*, &c. thus; *para ama-lo*, to love him *para ve-la*, or *ve-las*, to see her, or them, &c. and when they are joined to the preterperfect indicative of the verb *fazer*, and some others that have that tense ending in *iz*, they change the last *z* of them into *lo*, *la*, &c. as, *fi-lo*, I did it; *elle fe-lo*, he did, or made it, &c. but when they are joined to the future indicative of any verb with the auxiliary verb *haver*, then they change the terminations *rei*, *ras*, &c. of the futures into *lo*, *la*, &c. as, *fa-lo-bei*, I'll do it; *ama-lo-bei*, I'll love him, &c.

### *Remarks on the Pronouns.*

1st. *Him*, or *it*, which follow the verb in English, must be expressed in Portuguese, as in the following examples:

When *him* or *it* in English follow the verb in the first person of the singular number, it must be expressed in Portuguese by *o* before or after the verb. Exam. I call him or it, *eu o chamo*, or *eu chamo-o*.

When *him* or *it* in English follow the verb in the second person of the singular number, it may be expressed in Portuguese either by *o* before the verb, or *lo* after it, making an elision of the last consonant of



of the verb. Exam. Thou callest him *or it*, *tu o chamas*, or *chama-lo*.

When *him* or *it* is joined with the third person singular of a verb, it may be expressed by *o* before or after the verb. Ex. He calls him *or it*, *elle o chama*, ou *elle chama-o*.

When *him* or *it* is with a verb in the first person plural, it may be expressed in Portuguese either by *o* before the verb, or *lo* after it, making an elision as in the second case. Ex. We call him *or it*, *nos o chamamos*, or *nos chamamo-lo*.

When *him* or *it* is after a verb in the second person plural, it is expressed in Portuguese either by *o* before the verb, or *lo* after it, making an elision, &c. Ex. You call him *or it*, *vos o chamays*, or *ves chamay-lo*.

When *him* or *it* follows the verb in the third person plural, it may be expressed in Portuguese either by *o* before the verb, or *no* after it. Examp. They call him *or it*, *elles o chamao*, or *elles chamao-no*.

2dly. *Hier* or *it* after a verb in English is expressed in Portuguese by *a*, according to the rules just now proposed.

3dly. *Them* after a verb is expressed in Portuguese by *os* for the masculine, and by *as* for the feminine, according to the gender and the rules proposed.

4thly. The words *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, must be always put after the gerunds, but before the infinitives. Examp. Seeing him, we must not say *o vendo*, but *vendo-o*, because *vendo* is a gerund. To see him, instead of saying *para ver-o*, you must say, *para o ver*, because *ver* is in the infinitive.

5thly. The words *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las*, must be always put after the verbs. Examp. To see him, you must say, *para ve-lo*, or *para o ver*, and not *para lo ver*. The same words must follow also the adverb *eis*; and so you must say, *ei-lo aqui*, here he is; *ei-lo ali*, there he is; *ei-los aqui*, here they are; *ei-la ali*, there she



she is; *ei-las ali*, there they are. They follow likewise the persons of the verbs; as, *eu fi-lo*; *tu fizestelo*; *elle fe-lo*; *nos fizemo-lo*, &c. I made it, &c.

Note, that I have been speaking of the words *o, a, os, as, lo, la, los, las*, and not of the articles *o, a, os, as*; because when those words precede, and sometimes when they follow the verbs, are not articles, but pronouns relative. They are articles only when they precede the nouns or pronouns.



## C H A P. V.

### *Of the Syntax of Verbs.*

**T**HE verbs through every tense and mood (except the infinitive) ought to be preceded by a nominative case, either expressed or understood, with which they must agree in number and person. The nominative is expressed when we say, *eu amo, tu cantas*; understood when we say, *canto, digo*, &c.

The Portuguese, as well as English, use the second person plural, though they address themselves but to a single person.

### EXAMPLE.

*Meu amigo, vos não tendes razão*, my friend, you are in the wrong.

And if we would speak in the third person, we must say, *vm<sup>te</sup> tem razão*, sir, you are in the right.

The verb active governs the accusative; as, *amo a virtude*, I love virtue.

The



The verb passive requires an ablative after it ; as, *os doutos são envejados pelos ignorantes*, the learned are envied by the ignorant.

You must observe, that there is in Portuguese another way of making the passive, by adding the relative *se* to the third person singular or plural ; as, *am-se a Deos*, God is loved.

When there are two nominatives singular before a verb, in must be put in the plural number.

When a noun is collective, the verb requires the singular, not the plural ; as, *a gente está olhando*, the people are looking.

### *Syntax of the auxiliary Verbs.*

The verb *ter* is made use of to conjugate all the compound tenses of verbs ; as, *tenho amado, tinha amado*, I have loved, I had loved.

*Ter* signifies also to possess, to obtain ; as, *tenho dinheiro*, I have money ; *tem muita capacidade*, he has a great deal of capacity.

*Haver*, in account-books and trade, expresses credit or discharge.

*Haver* is also taken impersonally in Portuguese, and it signifies in English *there be* ; as, *há muito ouro no Mexico*, there is a great quantity of gold in Mexico.

*Haver-se*, made reciprocal, is the same as *to behave, to act* ; as, *houve-se o governador com tal prudencia, que, &c.* the governor behaved with such wisdom, that, &c.

We have already observed the difference betwixt *ser* and *estar*.

The verb *estar* is also used to conjugate the other verbs, chiefly expressing action ; as, *estou lendo, estou escrevendo*, I am reading, I am writing.

*Estar*, with the preposition *em*, in, or with *no, na, nos, nas*, signifies *to be present in a place* ; as, *estou no campo*, I am in the country.

*Estar,*



*Estar*, with the preposition *para*, denotes the inclination of doing what the following verb expresses, but without a full determination; as, *estou para ir-me de Londres*, I have a mind to go and live in London.

*Estar*, with the preposition *por*, and the infinitive of the verb following, means, that the thing expressed by the verb is not yet done; as, *isto está por escrever*, this is not yet written; *isto está por alimpar*, this is not yet cleaned; *estar por alguém*, signifies to agree with one, or to be of his opinion.

N. B. See in the Third Part the different significations of the verbs *estar* and *haver*.

When *ser* signifies the possession of one thing, it governs the genitive; as, *a rua he d'el-rey*, the street belongs to the king: *esta casa he de meu pay*, this house belongs to my father.

*Em ser* is taken for a thing to be whole or entire, without any alteration or mutilation; as, *as fazendas estão em ser*, the goods are not sold.

### *Of the Syntax of Verbs active, passive, &c.*

When two verbs come together, with or without any nominative case, then the latter must be in the infinitive mood; as, *quer vós aprender a fallar Inglez?* will you learn to speak English?

All verbs active govern the accusative; but if they are followed by a proper name of God, man, or woman, or any noun expressing their qualities or title, then it governs the dative case; as, *conheço a seu pay*, I know his father. *Achárao a João no caminho* they found John in the road.

All verbs of gesture, moving, going, resting, or doing, as also all the verbs that have the word that goes before, and the word that comes after, both belonging to one thing, require the nominative after them; as, *Pedro vai errado*, Peter goes on wrong;  
o pobre



*o pobre dorme descansado*, the poor sleep without care. Also the verb of the infinitive mood has the same case, when verbs of wishing and the like come after them; as, *todos dezejaõ ser ricos*, every body wishes to be rich; *antes quizerã ser douto que parecelo*, I had rather be learned than to be accounted so.

After verbs the Portuguese expresses *yes* and *no* by *que sim* and *que não*. Example, *creyo que sim*, I believe yes; *creyo que não*, I believe not; *digo que sim*, I say yes; *cuido que não*, I think not; *aposto que sim*, I lay yes; *quereis apostar que não?* have you a mind to lay not?

Verbs signifying grief, compassion, want, remembrance, forgetting, &c. will have the genitive; as, *pesame muito da morte de seu irmão*, I am very sorry for the death of your brother; *elle morre de fome*, he perishes by hunger; *lembre-se do que me disse*, remember what you said to me; *compadeçi-me das suas desgraças*, I pitied him for his misfortunes; *esquecime de tudo isto*, all this I forgot.

The reciprocals of jeering, boasting, and distrusting, govern all the genitive; as, *jaçar-se, gloriar-se, pizar-se, envergonhar-se*, &c.

All the verbs active govern the dative only when the substantive represents a person; as, *eu conheço a vme*, &c. I know you, &c.

The following verbs belong to this rule of the dative:

*Jogar*, to play; as *jogar às cartas*, to play at cards; *jogar aos centos*, to play at piquet; *jogar ao xadrez*, to play at chess, &c.

*Obedecer, desobedecer, agradar, comprazer*; as, *eu obedeço a Deos e a el rey*, I obey God and the king; *comprazeo em tudo aos soldados*, in all he pleased the soldiers.

*Mandar*, when it signifies to command an army, company, &c. requires the accusative, but when other things, the dative; as *elle mandava a cavallaria*, he commanded the horse; *o governador mandou*



*dou a todos os moradores que se retirassem para suas casas*, the governor ordered all the inhabitants to retire into their houses.

*Ir*, to go; as, *vou a Paris*, I go to Paris.

*Affistir*, *ajudar*, *socorrer*, to help; as, *assistir ao officio divino*, to assist at divine service.

*Saudar*, to salute, or greet; as, *elle sauda a todos*, he salutes every body.

*Fallar*, to speak; *satisfazer*, to satisfy; *servir*, to serve; *favorecer*, to favour; *ameaçar*, to threaten.

The verbs of pleasing, displeasing, granting, denying, pardoning, will have the person in the dative case.

The impersonals *acontecer*, *succeder*, *importar*, *pertencer*, and the like to these, will have often two datives of person; as, *a mim me succedeo*, it happened to me; *a elle lhe convem*, it suits him, or it is convenient for him; *a elle não lhe importa*, it does not concern him, &c.

All the active verbs require an accusative; and the Latin verbs which govern the accusative of the thing, and the dative of the person, govern generally the same in Portuguese; as, *escrevei o que digo a vosso irmão*, write to your brother what I do say.

Verbs of asking, teaching, arraying, will have an accusative of the doer or sufferer, and sometimes verbs neuter will have an accusative of the thing; as, *gozar saúde*, to enjoy health; *peço este favor*, I ask this favour; *elle toca muito bem flauta*, he plays very well on the flute; *curar huma doença*, to cure a sickness.

Verbs passive, and the greatest part of the reciprocals, require the ablative, with *de*, *do*, *da*, *dos*, *das*, *por*, or *pello*, *pella*, *pellos*, *pella*; as, *fui chamado por el rey*, I was called the king; *retirei-me da cidade*, I retired from the city; *elle foi amado do povo*, he was loved by the people. But you must except *acostar-se*, which requires a dative preceded by *a*; *encostar-se*, which sometimes will have a dative,



tive, and sometimes an ablative preceded by *em*, *no*, *na*, *nos*, or *nas*; *meter-se*, which requires an ablative; *sentar-se*, *introduzir-se*, &c. which must have the ablative with the preposition *em*, *no*, *na*, *nos*, *nas*.

The verbs joined with a noun which they govern, must have the infinitive with *de*; as, *estou com vontade de rir*, I am near laughing.

The price of any thing bought, or sold, or bartered, will have the accusative with *por*.

The verb *por-se*, when it signifies *to begin*, must have the infinitive, with the particle *a*; as *por-se a chorar*, to begin to cry.

Verbs of plenty, filling, emptying, loading, unloading, will have the ablative; as, *esta terra abunda de trigo*; this country abounds with corn; *elle está carregado de misérias*, he is loaded with calamities.

Verbs denoting custom, help, beginning, exhortation, invitation, require the infinitive with the particle *a*; as *ajudar a semear*, to help sowing; *convidou me a ceiar*, he invited me to supper.

Verbs that signify distance, receiving, or taking away, will have the ablative; as, *a Madeira dista de Marrocos 320 milhas*, Madeira lies 320 miles from Morocco.

Note, that the verbs signifying receiving, or taking away, generally require the ablative of person; but they sometimes require an accusative, particularly the verb *receber*, when it signifies *to welcome*, or *to entertain*; as, *elle recebe todos com muito agrado*, he gives his company a hearty reception, he makes them very welcome.

Verbs denoting obligation, govern the following infinitive with the preposition *a*; as, *eu o obrigarei a fazer isto*, I will oblige him to do it.

Verbs of arguing, quarrelling, fighting, &c. will have the ablative with *com*; as, *pelejou mais de huma hora com seu irmão*, he quarrelled more than one hour with his brother

After



After the verb substantive *ser*, to be, *para* is made use of as well as *a*: the first is employed to denote the use or destination of any thing; as, *esta penna he para escrever*, this pen is to write with. But the particle *a* is used to denote only the action; as, *elle foy o primeiro a fugir*, he was the first to run away.

The verbs of motion to a place always govern the dative; as, *vou á comedia*, I go to the play. Though the verb *voltar*, to return, may also have an accusative, with the preposition *para*. But the verbs of motion from a place govern the ablative with *de*, *do*, *da*, *dos*, *das*; as, *venho do campo*, I come from the country. If the motion is through a place, then the verbs govern the accusative, with *por*; as, *passarei por Londres*, I will come by the way of London.

### *Of the Use and Construction of the Tenses.*

Though we have spoken at large upon the tenses in the First Part, you must, however, take notice,

1. That they make use of the infinitive and the auxiliary verb *haver*, together with the pronouns *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las*, instead of the future indicative; as, *ouvi-lo-hei*, I will hear him; and then the *r* of the infinitive is changed into *le*, *la*, *los*, *las*; and sometimes they make use of the infinitive mood and the auxiliary verb *haver*, with the pronouns conjunctive *me*, *te*, *se*, &c. instead of the same future; as, *dar-lhe-hei*, I will give him; *agastar-se-ha*, he will be angry.

2. That when we find the particle *if*, which in Portuguese is expressed by *se*, before the imperfect indicative, we must generally use the imperfect subjunctive in Portuguese; example, *se eu tivesse*, if I had; *se eu pudesse*, if I could. But sometimes they use the imperfect indicative; as, *disse-lhe que se queria*, &c. he told him that if he was willing, &c.

L

3. That



3. That the first imperfect subjunctive in Portuguese is also used in a sense that denotes the present, especially in sentences of wishing; as, *quizera que Domingo fizesse bom tempo*, I wish it would be fine weather on Sunday. But if the same tense is preceded by *ainda que*, although, then it must be rendered into English by the second imperfect subjunctive, or by the imperfect indicative; as, *eu não a quizera ainda que tivesse milboens de seu*, though she was worth several millions I would not have her; *ainda que elle consentisse nisso não se podia fazer*, although he would consent to it that could not be done. Lastly, when the first imperfect subjunctive is preceded by *se*, it is sometimes rendered into English by the second imperfect subjunctive; as *se elle viesse*, if he should come.

The English are apt to put the first imperfect of the subjunctive where the Portuguese make use of the second; as, I had been in the wrong, *não teria tido razão*; and though they may say *não tivera tido razão*, they may not say *não tivesse tido razão*, to express the English of, *I should have been in the wrong*, or *I had been in the wrong*.

Note, that to express in Portuguese, *though that should be*, we must say *quando isso fosse*, and not *seria*.

The Portuguese use the future tense subjunctive after the conjunction *if*, when they speak of a future action, but the English the present indicative: example, tomorrow if I have time, *amanhã se tiver tempo*, and not *se terbo*; if he comes we shall see him, *nos o veremos se elle vier*.

A conjunction between two verbs obliges the last to be of the same number, person, and tense as the first: example, the king wills and commands, *el rey quer e ordena*; I see and I know, *eu vejo e conheço*.

Sometimes the present is made use of, instead of the preter definite, in narrations; as, *no mesmo tempo que lia andando, o encontra o despe, e o asa a buma*  
arvore.



*arvore*, as he was going he meets him, he strips him, and ties him to a tree.

When the Portuguese use the infinitive with a third person in the plural, they add *em* to it, and it is generally preceded by *por*, for, and *para*, in order to, that, or to the end that; as, *elles foram enforcados por furtarem*, they were hanged for robbing; *para serem enformados*, that, to the end that, they may be informed; *para poderem dizer*, that they may be able to say.

Observe, that when the Portuguese put *por* before the first future subjunctive, they speak of a time past; as, *por fallardes*, because you have spoken. But when they put *para* before it, then they speak of a time to come; as, *para fallarmos*, that, or to the end that we may speak, in order to speak.

### *Of Moods.*

All the tenses of the indicative mood may be employed without any conjunction before them; but they admit also of some. Besides the conjunction *que*, those that may be made use of are *se*, *como*, and *quando*, with some distinction in respect to *se*, because this conjunction is seldom used before the future tense, and then it is governed by a verb signifying ignorance, doubt, or interrogation; as, *naõ sei se haõ de vir*, I do not know if they shall come; *estou em dũvida se os inimigos passaraõ o rio*, I doubt if the enemies will pass the river; *naõ pergunto se partirá*, I do not ask if he will set out.

The optative or subjunctive in Portuguese has always some sign annexed; as, *oxalá*, *peçucera a Deus*, *ò se!* would to God, I pray God, God grant! &c. *que*, *para que*, &c. that, &c.

The particle *que* is not expressed in the present of this mood; but it is understood in sentences of wishing or praying; as, *Deos o faça bem*, let God amend him.



When *que* is between two verbs, the last is not always put in the subjunctive, because though some say *creyo que venha*, I believe he comes; I think it is better to say *creyo que vem*; but when there is a negation, the verb following *que* must be put in the subjunctive; as, *naõ creyo que venha*, I do not believe he will come; *naõ creyo que venha tão cedo*, I do not believe he will come so soon.

When the verbs *crer*, to believe, *saber*, to know, are used interrogatively, and followed by the particle *que*, the next verb is put in the indicative, when the person that asked the question makes no doubt of the thing which is the object in question; as, if knowing that peace is made, I want to know if the people whom I converse with know it too, I will express myself thus, *sabeis vos que está feita a paz?* do you know that peace is made? But if I have it only by a report, and doubt of it, and want to be informed of it, I must ask the question thus, *sabeis vos que a paz esteja feita?* and by no means *sabeis vos que está feita a paz?*

You must observe also, that the present subjunctive of *saber* is elegantly used when it is attended by a negative and the particle *que* in this phrase, *naõ que eu saiba*, not that I know of.

All the verbs used impersonally with the particle *que*, require the subjunctive: as, *he preciso que elle venha*, he must come; *convem que isto se faça*, it is convenient that this be done. You must only except such sentences as express any positive assurance, or certainty; as, *he certo que vem*, it is certain that he comes; *sei que está em casa*, I know he is at home.

From these observations it follows, that all the verbs not expressing a positive assurance, or believing, but only denoting *ignorance*, *doubt*, *fear*, *astonishment*, *admiration*, *wishing*, *praying*, *pretension*, or *desire*, govern all the subjunctive mood after *que*; as, *as duvido que possa*, I doubt it is in his power; *temo que morra*, I am afraid he will die; *admiro-me*

*que*



*que consinta nisso.* I wonder he agrees to it, &c. to all which they add *oxalá*, an Arabic word, signifying *God grant*, which is used in Portuguese before all the tenses of the optative or conjunctive, as well as *praza a Deos*, may it please God; or, *prouvera a Deos*, might it please God.

When *que* is relative, and there is a verb in the imperative or in the indicative, with a negative or interrogation before it, it governs likewise the subjunctive; as, *naõ ha cousa que mais me inquiete*, there is nothing that disturbs me more; *ha cousa no mundo que me possa dar tanto gosto?* is there any thing in the world that may give me more pleasure? *allegai-lhe tantas razoes que o possam persuadir*, give him so many reasons that he may be persuaded.

The present subjunctive is sometimes rendered into English by the second preterimperfect subjunctive, when it is followed by a verb in the future tense; as, *ainda que eu trabalhe nunca hei de cançar*, though I should work I never would be tired.

The Portuguese use specially the same present subjunctive for the future; as in these sentences, and others like:

*Naõ duvido que venha*, I do not doubt but he will come.

*Duvido que o faça*, I doubt that, or whether he will do it.

Therefore avoid carefully those faults which foreigners are so apt to make, in considering rather the tense which they want to turn into Portuguese, than the mood which the genius of the language requires.

The present indicative is also used for the future, as well as in English: example, *jantais hoje em casa?* do you dine at home to-day?



*Of the Particles governing the Optative or Subjunctive.*

The conjunction *que*, that, generally requires the subjunctive after it; but *antes que*, *primeiro que*, before that, always require it.

Take notice, that *que* makes all the words to which it is joined become conjunctives; as, *para que*, to the end that; *bem que*, *ainda que*, &c. *Poſto que*, although; *até que*, till; *quando*, *como querque*, which commonly govern the subjunctive. But *com que* *assim* governs the indicative; as, *com que*, or *com que assim*, *virá amanhaã*, ſo he will come to-morrow.

In Portuguese you muſt take care how you expreſs *though* or *although*; if it is by *ainda que*, you may put either the ſubjunctive or indicative after it: example, *ainda que ſeja homem honrado*, though he is an honeſt man; *ainda que elle faz aquillo*, though he does that. But if you render *although* or *though* by *naõ obſtante*, then you muſt uſe the infinitive: example, though he is an honeſt man, *naõ obſtante ſer elle homem honrado*; though he does this, *naõ obſtante fazer elle iſto*.

The impersonal verbs generally govern the ſubjunctive with *que*; but with this diſtinction, when the impersonal is in the preſent tenſe or future, of the indicative mood, then it requires the preſent ſubjunctive mood; but when the impersonal, or any other verb taken impersonally, is in any of the preterites indicative, then it governs the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect of the ſubjunctive, according to the meaning of ſpeech; as *importa muito que el rey veja tudo*, it is of great moment that the king may ſee all; *foy conveniente que o principe foſſe com elle*, it was convenient that the prince ſhould go with him.

The preſent ſubjunctive is likewiſe contrued when the particle *por* is ſeparated from *que*, by an adjective; as, *por grande*, *por admiravel*, *por douto que ſeja*, though he be great, admirable, learned.

An



An imperative often requires the future of the subjunctive ; as *succeda o que succeder*, or *seja o que for*, happen what shall happen, at all events.

The imperfect subjunctive is repeated in this phrase, and others like, *sucedesse o que sucedesse*, let happen what would.

The future of the subjunctive mood follow generally these, *logo que*, *quando*, *se*, *como*, &c. as, *logo que chegar iremos a passear*, as soon as he comes we will go and take a walk ; *quando vier estaremos promptos*, when he comes we will be ready.

Observe, that *quando* and *logo que* may also be construed with the indicative mood ; as, *quando el rey ve tudo não o enganao*, when the king sees every thing he is not deceived ; *logo que chegou falei com elle*, as soon as he came I spoke with him.

### *Of the Infinitive Mood.*

In Portuguese there is not a general sign before the infinitive, as in English the particle *to* ; but there are several particles used before the infinitive, denoting the same as *to* does in English, and they are governed by the preceding verbs or nouns. These particles are the following : *a* *para*, *de*, *com*, *em*, *por*, *até*, *despois de* ; and the article *o*, when the infinitive serves as a nominative to another verb ; as, *o dizer e o fazer são duas cousas*, saying and doing are two different things.

*A* coming between two verbs, notes the second as the object of the first ; as, *a tardança das nossas esperanças nos ensina a mortificar os nossos desejos*, the delay of our hopes teaches us to mortify our desires ; *elle começa a discurrer*, he begins to reason.

*Para* notes the intention or usefulness ; as, *a adversidade serve para experimentar a paciencia*, adversity serves to try one's patience. *Para* after an adjective denotes its object ; as, *está prompto para obedecer*, he is ready to obey.



*De* is put between two verbs, if the first governs the genitive or ablative; and when the substantive or adjective governs either of these two cases, *de* must go before the following verbs, or infinitive; as, *venho de ver a meu pay*, I have just seen my father; *he tempo de-birse*, it is time to go away; *el rey foi servido de mandar*, the king has been pleased to order.

The infinitive is on several occasions governed by prepositions or conjunctions; as, *sem dizer palavra*, without speaking a word: where you may observe, it is expressed in English by the participle present; as, *nunca se cança de jogar*, he is never weary of playing; *diverte-se em caçar*, he delights in hunting; *elle está doente por trabalhar demasiadamente*, by working too much he is sick; *perde o seu tempo em passear*, he loses his time in walking; *bei-de ir-me, sem me despedir?* shall I go away without taking my leave?

The infinitive is also used passively; as, *naõ ha que dizer, que ver, &c.* there is nothing to be said, seen, &c.

The gerund of any verb active may be conjugated with the verb *estar*, to be, after the same manner as in English: as, *estou escrevendo*, I am writing; *elle estava dormindo*, he was asleep, &c.



## C H A P. VI.

### *Of the Syntax of Participles and Gerunds.*

**T**HE participle in the Portuguese language generally ends in *do*, or *to*; as, *amado, visto, dito, &c.*

The active participles that follow the verb *ter*, to have, must end in *o*; as,

*Tenho visto el rey*, I have seen the king.

*Tenho*



*Tenho visto a rainha*, I have seen the queen.

*Eu tinha amado os livros*, I had loved books.

*Eu tinha levado as cartas*, I had carried the letters.

We meet with authors who sometimes make the participles agree with the thing of which they are speaking; as, in *Camoens*, Canto. 1. Stanza xxix.

*E porque, como vistes, tem passados*

*Na viagem tão asperos perigos*

*Tantos climas, e ceos experimentados, &c.*

And Canto. 2. Stan. LXXVI.

*São offerecimentos verdadeiros,*

*E palavras sinceras, não dobradas,*

*As que o rey manda a os nobres cavaleiros,*

*Que tanto mar e terras tem passadas.*

If it be a verb neuter, the participle ought always to terminate in *o*: example.

*El rey tem jantado*, the king has dined; *a rainha tem ceado*, the queen has supped; *os vossos amigos tem rido*, your friends have laughed; *minhas irmãs tem dormido*, my sisters have slept.

When the active participle happens to precede an infinitive, it must be terminated in *o*; as, *o juiz lhe tinha feito cortar a cabeça*, the judge had caused his head to be cut off.

The passive participles which are joined with the tenses of the verb *ser*, to be, agree with the substantive that precedes the verb *ser*; as, *o capitão foy louvado*, the captain was praised; *a virtude he estimada*, virtue is esteemed; *os preguiçosos são censurados*, the lazy are blamed; *as vossas joyas forão vendidas*, your jewels were sold.

The Portuguese generally suppress the gerunds *having* and *being* before participles; as, *dito isto*, having said so; *acabado o sermão*, the sermon being ended. This manner of speaking is called by grammarians *ablatives absolute*.

The participle of the present tense in Portuguese has singular and plural, but one termination serves for both genders; as, *hum homem temente á Deos*, a  
man



man fearing God; *huma molher temente á Deos*, a woman fearing God; *homens tementes á Deos*, people fearing God.

There are in Portuguese a great many participles which are used substantively; as, *ignorante*, *amante*, *ouvinte*, *estudante*, &c. an ignorant, a lover, an auditor or hearer, a scholar, &c.

It is better to place the nominative after the gerund than before; as, *estando el rey na comedia*, the king being at the play.



## C H A P. VII.

### *Of Prepositions.*

**A** Preposition is a part of speech which is put before nouns, and sometimes before verbs, to explain some particular circumstance.

Prepositions may be divided into separable and inseparable. An inseparable preposition is never found but in compound words, and signifies nothing of itself. A separable preposition is generally separated from other words, and signifies something of itself.

The inseparable prepositions are,

*Ab* and *abs*; as, *abrogar*, to abrogate; *abster-se*, to abstain.

*Arce*, or *archi*; as, *arcebispo*, an archbishop; *archiduque*, an archduke.

*Ad*; as, *adventicio*, adventitious.

*Am*; as, *ambiguo*, ambiguous; *amparo*, protection, shelter.

*Circum*; as, *circunstancia*, circumstance.

*Co*; as, *cohabitar*, to live together, to cohabit.

*Des*, serves to express the contrary of the word it is joined to; as, *desacerto*, mistake; *desfazer*, to undo;



*do*; *desenganar*, to undeceive; are the contrary of *acerto*, *fazer*, and *enganar*.

*Dis*; as, *dispor*, to dispose; *distinguir*, to distinguish; *distribuir*, to distribute.

*Ex*; as, *extrahir*, to extract.

*In*, has commonly a negative or privative sense, denoting the contrary of the meaning of the word it precedes; as, *incapaz*, unable; *infeliz*, unhappy; *inacção*, inaction, &c. but sometimes it is affirmative, as in Latin.

Observe, that *in* before *r* is changed into *ir*; as, *irregular*, irregular; *irracional*, irrational: before *l*, into *il*; as, *illegítimo*, illegitimate; before *m*, *in* is changed into *im*; as, *immaterial*, immaterial.

*Ob*; as, *obviar*, to obviate.

*Pos*; as, *pospor*, to postpone, or to postpone.

*Pre*; as, *preceder*, to go before; *predecessor*, an ancestor.

*Pro*; as, *propôr*, to propose; *prometer*, to promise.

*Re*, is a borrowed particle from the Latins, which generally denotes iteration, or backward action; as, *reedificar*, to rebuild; *repercutir*, to repercute, or strike back.

*So*; as, *socorrer*, to help, to succour.

*Sor*; as, *sorrir*, to smile.

*Sos*; as, *soster*, to support.

*Soto*; as, *sotopor*, to put or lay under.

*Sub*, or *sob*; as, *subalterno*, subaltern; *subscriver*, to subscribe; *sobpena*, *sobcolor*, &c.

The Arabic article *al*, which is common to all genders and both numbers, is found in the beginning of almost all the words that remain in the Portuguese language from the Arabic, and it is the surest way to distinguish them. But the Portuguese articles are added to the Arabic nouns, without taking off their article *al*, as *a almofada*, the cushion; *o Alcorão*, the Coran, &c.

The



The Greek preposition *anti* enters into the composition of a great many Portuguese words, which cannot be set down here. It is enough to observe, that it signifies generally opposite; as in *Antipodas*, Antipodes; *antipapa*, antipope; and sometimes it signifies *before*; as in *antiloque*, a preface, a speaking first; but in this last sense it is derived from the Latin preposition *ante*.

### *Of separable Prepositions.*

It is absolutely impossible ever to attain to the knowledge of any language whatever, without thoroughly understanding the divers relations denoted by the prepositions, and the several cases of nouns which they govern; both which relations and cases being arbitrary, vary and differ much in all languages. This only instance will evince it: the English say, *to think of a thing*; the French, *to think to a thing*; the Germans and Dutch, *to think on, or upon a thing*; the Spaniards and Portuguese, *to think in a thing*, &c. Now it will avail an Englishman but little to know that *of* is expressed in Portuguese by *de*, if he does not know which relations *em* and *de* denote in that language; since the Portuguese say, *to think in a thing*, and not *of a thing*; therefore we will treat here of each of them, and their construction, separately.

1st. *A*, or rather *ao, as, aos*, (at, in, on, &c.) denote the place whither one is going; as,

*Eu vou a Londres*, I go to London.

*Voltar a Portugal*, to return, or go back to Portugal.

*A*, in this sense, is a preposition, but in the next observations it is a particle.

2dly. *A* denotes time; as, *chegar a tempo*, to arrive in time; *a todo o tempo*, at all times.

3dly. *A* denotes the way of being, or of doing of people; as also their posture, gesture, or action; as,

*Estar*



*Estar a sua vontade*, to be at one's ease.

*A direita*, on the right hand; *a esquerda*, on the left hand.

*Viver á sua vontade*, to live to one's mind as one likes.

*Andar á pé ou a cavallo*, to go on foot, or a-horseback.

*Montar a cavallo*, to ride a-horseback.

*Correr á redea solta*, to ride full speed.

*Trajar a Francesa*, to dress after the French way.

*Viver á Ingleza*, to live after the English fashion.

*Andar a grandes passos*, to walk at a great rate.

*Andar a passos lentos*, to walk very slowly.

4thly. *A* denotes the price of things; as, *a oito xelins*, at eight shillings. It denotes also the weight; but as the nouns signifying weight are generally used in the plural number, hence it is that they add *s* to *a*, when it is placed before nouns of the feminine gender, and *os* when it precedes nouns of the masculine gender: so they say, *as onças*, by the ounce; *aos arrateis*, by the pound, &c. *A* denotes also the measure; as *medir a palmos*, to span or measure by the hand extended.

When *a* is preceded by *daqui*, and followed by a noun of time, it denotes the space of time after which something is to be done; as, *el rey partira daqui a tres dias*, the king will set out three days hence.

5thly. *A* denotes the tools used in working, as likewise the games one plays at; as, *abrir ao buril*, to grave; wherein you see they add *o* to *a*; *traballar á candea*, to do any thing by candle-light; *á gulba*, with the needle.

*Andar á vela*, to sail, or to be under sail.

*Jogar á pala*, to play at tennis.

*Jogar ás cartas*, to play at cards: wherein you see they add *s* to *a* when the noun is of the feminine gender, and placed in the plural number.

*Jogar*



*Jogar aos centos*, to play at piquet; wherein you see they add *os* to *a* when it precedes nouns signifying games, when they are of the masculine gender, and put in the plural number.

6thly. *A* signifies sometimes *as*. Examp. *Está isto a seu gosto?* is this as you like it? And sometimes it signifies *after*; as, *a seu modo*, after his or her way. It signifies also *in*; as, *ao principio*, in the beginning; but then they add *o* to it.

7thly. *A* is also put before the infinitives, preceded by another verb; as, *ensinar a cantar*, to teach to sing. It is also placed between two equal numbers, to denote order; as, *dous a dous*, two by two; *quatro a quatro*, four by four: and sometimes it is preceded by a participle or adjective, and followed by an infinitive mood.

8thly. *A* is a particle of composition, serving to many nouns, verbs, and adverbs, of which it often increases the meaning; as, *adinbeirado*, very rich, that has a great deal of money; but it generally expresses in verbs the action of the nouns they are composed of; as, *ajoelhar*, to kneel down, which is formed from *a* and *joelho*, knee; *abrandar*, to appease; *alargar*, to enlarge; from *bando*, soft; *largo*, wide, &c.

9thly. *A*, when it is preceded by the verb *ser*, and followed by the pronouns personal, signifies *in the stead of*; as, *se eu fosse a vos faria aquilo*, if I was you (in your place) I would do that.

10thly. When *á* is placed before *casa*, and the sense implies *going to*, it is Englished by *to*, but the word *casa* is left out; as, *elle foi á casa do governador*, he went to the governor's. You must observe, that *a* in this sense is a preposition.

11th, *Ao pe* signifies *near*; as, *ponde kum ao pe do outro*, place, put, or set them near one another. Sometimes *mesmo* comes before *ao pe*, to express still more the nearness of a thing, and *mesmo ao pe*  
is



is Englished by *hard by, just by, &c.* as, *a sua casa está mesmo ao pé de minha*, his house is just by mine.

12th. When the noun *respeito* is preceded by *a*, it is used in the same sense as *em comparação*, but requires one of these particles, *do, da, dos, das*, after it, and signifies *in comparison of, in regard to, in respect of*; as, *isto he nada a respeito do que posso dizer*, this is nothing to other things that I can say.

13thly. When *a* comes after a verb neuter, it marks a dative; and after a verb active, an accusative case.

*A* before the word *propósito* is used in familiar discourses; as, *a propósito, esquecime de dizervos o outro dia*; now I think on't, I forgot to tell you t'other day.

14th. *Ao revez*, or, *as avessas*, are also used as prepositions, attended by *de, do, da, &c.* and it signifies *quite the reverse, or contrary*; as, *elle faz tudo ao revez, or as avessas do que houvera de ser, ou do que lhe dizem*, he does every thing quite the reverse of right, or contrary to what he is bid.

15thly. *A* before *troco* signifies *provided that*. It is also used before the word *tiro*; as, *a tiro de peça*, within cannon-shot.

16thly. *Cara a cara, corpo a corpo*, signify, face to face, body to body. *Tomar huma coisa á boa ou á má parte*, signifies to take a thing well or ill.

Such are the chief relations denoted by the particle *a*. The others must be learned in construing and reading good Portuguese books.

II. *De*, or rather, *do, da, dos, das*, (of, from, &c.) denote, first, the place one comes from; as, *sair de Londres*, to go out of London; *vir de França, das Indias, &c.* to come from France, from the Indies, &c.

2d. *De* between two nouns denotes the quality of the person expressed by the first noun; as, *hum homem de honra*, a man of honour: or the matter which the thing of the first noun is made of; as,

*Huma*



*Huma estátua de marmore*, a statue of marble.

*Huma ponte de madeira ou de pedra*, a wood or stone bridge.

Note, that two nouns so joined with *de* are commonly Englished by two nouns likewise, but without a preposition, or rather by a compound word, whose first noun (whether substantive or adjective) expresses the matter and quality, manner, form, and use of the other; as, a stone-bridge, *huma ponte de pedra*; a dancing-master, *hum mestre de dança*.

3d. *De, do, da, dos, das*, are used in Portuguese after the participles of the preterit, with *ser*; as, *ser amado, ou bem visto do povo, dos sabios, &c.* to be beloved by the people, by the learned, &c.

Note, that *do* serves for the masculine, *da* for the feminine, and *de* for both.

4th. *De* sometimes signifies *by*; as, *de noite*, by night; *de dia*, by day.

5th. *De* before *em*, and many nouns of time denotes the regular interval of the time after which something begins again; as, *eu vou velo de dous em dous dias*, I go to see him every other day; and before nouns of place and adverbs repeated with *em* or *para* between, *de* denotes the passing from one place or condition to another; as, *correr de rua em rua*, to run from street to street; *de mal para peor*, worse and worse.

6th. *De*, after some verbs, signifies *after* or *in*; as, *elle portou-se d'esta sorte*, he behaved *in* or *after* this manner.

7th. *De* is used before an infinitive, and is then governed by some previous noun or verb; as, *capaz de ensinar*, capable to teach; *digno de ser amado*, worthy to be loved, &c. *procurar de fazer*, to endeavour to do; *authoridade de pregar*, the power or authority of preaching, &c.

8th. *De* is sometimes Englished by *on*; as, *por-se de joelhos*, to kneel down *on* one's knees.

9. *De*



9. *De* between two nouns denotes the use which a thing is designed for; as, *azeite de candea*, lamp-oil; *arma de fogo*, a fire-arm; *moinho de vento*, a wind-mill.

Note, that this relation is expressed in English by two nouns, making a compound word; the first of which signifies the manner, form, and use, denoted by the Portuguese preposition; as, *cadeira de braços*, an arm-chair, or elbow-chair; *vela de cera*, a wax-candle, &c.

10. *De* denotes sometimes the quality of things; as, *meas de tres fios*, stockings with three threads. Sometimes it denotes also the price; as, *panno de dezoito xelins*, eighteen shillings cloth.

11. *De* is sometimes Englished by *upon*; as, *viver ou sustentar se de peixe*, to live upon fish. Sometimes it is Englished by *with*; as, *morrer de frio*, to starve with cold.

12. *De* sometimes signifies *for* or *out of*; as, *saltar de alegria*, to leap for joy; *de modesto*, out of modesty.

13. *De* signifies sometimes *at*; as, *zombar de alguem*, to laugh at one.

14. *De* is sometimes left out in English; as, *gozar de huma cousa*, to enjoy a thing.

15. *De* followed by two nouns of number and the preposition *até* between them, is Englished by *between*; as, *hum homem de quarenta até cincoenta annos*, a man between forty and fifty.

16. *De*, preceded by the preposition *diante*, is left out in English; as, *diante de mim*, before me; *diante de Deos*, before God.

17. *De*, when it is placed before *casa*, and the sense implies *coming from*, is Englished by *from*; but the word *casa* sometimes is left out in English, and sometimes not; as, *venho de casa* (meaning my house) I come from home, from my house: but when they say, *venho de casa da Senhora C*, we must



render it in English thus, *I am returning from Mrs. C's.*

Finally, *de* is used before several words; as, *de bruços*, lying all along on the ground; *de madrugada*, soon in the morning; *de veras*, in earnest, seriously; *de verão*, in summer; *homem de palavra*, a man as good as his word; *de costas*, backwards, or on one's back; *andar de pe*, to be sickish without being bed-ridden: and many others which must be learnt by use.

### *Antes.*

III. *Antes*, before, shews a relation of time, of which it denotes priority; and is always opposite to *depois*, after; as, *antes da criação do mundo*, before the creation of the world.

*Primeiro* is also a preposition; as, *elle chegou primeiro que eu*, he arrived before me.

### *Diante.*

IV. *Diante*, before, shews a relation of place, and it is always opposite to *detráz*, behind. It signifies also sometimes *em*, or *na presença*; as, *ha arvores diante da sua casa*, there are trees before his house; *ponde aquillo diante do fogo*, set or put that before the fire; *pregar diante del rey*, to preach before the king.

*Diante* is also sometimes an adverb, and may be used instead of *adiante*; as, *ir diante* or *adiante*, to go before: but in the following phrase you must say, *não vades tanto adiante*, and not *diante*, don't go so far; *por diante* is to be Englished by *on* in the following phrase, *ide por diante*, go on.

### *Depois.*

V. *Depois*, after, denotes posteriority of time, and it is used in opposition to *antes*; as, *depois do diluvio*, after the deluge: *depois do meio dia*, after noon.

*Depois* also is used with an infinitive; as, *feito aquillo*, or *tendo feito aquillo*, or *depois de fazer aquillo*,  
after



after having done that ; and it is also made a conjunction with *que*, governing the indicative ; as, *depois que teve feito aquillo*, after he had done that.

*Detraz.*

VI. *Detraz*, behind, denotes posteriority both of place and order, and it is said in opposition to *diante* ; as, *a sua casa está detraz da vossa*, his house is behind your's ; *elle vinha detraz de mim*, he walked after me.

*Em.*

VII. *Em*, or *no*, *na*, *nos*, *nas*, (in, into, within, &c.) denote a relation both of time and place. The many various significations in which these prepositions are used, must be accurately observed, and much regard had to them in the practice.

*No* and *na* are sometimes rendered into English by *a* ; as, *duas vezes no dia*, *na semana*, &c. twice a day, a week, &c.

*No*, *na*, &c. are always used before nouns denoting the place wherein something is kept ; as, *está no gabinete*, it is in the closet ; *na papeleira*, in the bureau ; *nas gavetas*, in the drawers ; *na rua*, in the street, &c. but sometimes they are Englished by *upon* ; as, *cahir no chão*, to fall upon the ground.

*Em*, *no*, *na*, &c. signifies commonly *in* ; as, *em Londres*, in London ; *está na graça del rey*, he is in favour with the king ; but in some cases it has a very particular meaning ; as, *estar em corpo*, which signifies literally *to be in body* ; but the true sense of it is *to be without a cloak* ; so that the body is more exposed to view without an upper garment. *Estar em pernas*, literally, *to be in legs*, signifies *to be bare-legged* ; that is, the legs exposed without stockings. *Estar em camisa* is said of one that has only the shirt on his back.

When this preposition *em* is before an infinitive in Portuguese, then it is an English gerund ; as, *consiste em fallar bem*, it consists in speaking well ;



but when it is found before a gerund, it signifies *as soon as*; as, *em acabando irei*, as soon as I have done I will go.

*Nos nossos tempos* is Englished by *now a days*.

*Em* is used in sentences that imply a general sense; as, *Elle está em miseravel estado*, he is in a wretched condition; and not *no miseravel*: but if the sentences imply a particular sense, you must make use of *no*, *na*, &c. as, *no miseravel estado em que elle está*, in the wretched condition wherein he is; and not *em miseravel*. You must observe in this last example and the like, that you ought to make use of *em* before *que*, and not of *no*, *na*, &c. which only are to be placed before *qual*; therefore you must not say, *no miseravel estado no que elle está*; but you may say, *no miseravel estado no qual elle está*.

Note, that *em* construed with pronouns without an article, makes a sort of adverb, rendered into English by a preposition and a noun; thus in this sentence, *nos iremos em coche*, we shall go in a coach; *em coche* is an adverb of manner, which shews how we shall go: but *no coche* denotes something besides; as if a company were considering how they shall ride to a place, somebody would say, *vos ireis na cadeirinha*, e nós *no coche*, you shall go in the chair and we in the coach; *no coche* would be said in opposition to *na cadeirinha*; and both respectively to some specified chair and coach; or else they should say, *vos ireis em cadeirinha e nos em coche*. But in this other sentence, *eu deixei o meu chapeo no coche*, I left my hat in the coach, it would be improper to say *em coche*, because some particular coach is meant, to wit, that which has drove me here or there, or which has been spoken of.

We say *de verão*, *no verão*, or *em o verão*; *de inverno*, *no inverno*, &c. in summer; in winter, &c.

*Em* is also rendered into English by *at*; as, *em todo o tempo*, at all times.



*Em* is used, and never *no*, *na*, &c. before proper names of cities and authors; as, *elle está em Londres*, he is in London; *nós lemos em Cicero*, we read in Tully. But they say *no Porto*, in Oporto.

*Em*, and *no*, *na*, &c. are construed with names of kingdoms; as, *em* or *na Inglaterra*, in England but *no*, *na*, is most commonly construed with names of provinces; as, *no Alentejo*, *na Beira*, &c. in Alentejo, in Beira, &c.

*Em* is sometimes rendered into English by *into*; as, *Narciso foi transformado em flor*, Narcissus was metamorphosed into a flower: and sometimes by *to*; as, *de rua em rua*, from street to street.

*No*, *na*, are sometimes rendered into English by *against*; as, *dar coa cabeça na parede*, to dash one's head against the wall.

*No*, *na*, &c. are also rendered into English by *in*, and sometimes by *into*; as, *ter hum menino nos braços*, to hold a child in one's arms; *entregar alguma coisa nas mãos de alguém*, to deliver a thing into some body's hands.

*Em* is used before the word *travez*, as in this phrase, *por-se de mar em travéz com alguém*, to fall out together.

*Em* before a noun of time, denotes the space of time that slides away in doing something; as, *el rey foi a Hanover em tres dias*, the king went to Hanover in three days; that is, he was no longer than three days in going.

*Em* is sometimes used after the verb *hir*, to go; as, *vai em quatro meses que eu aqui cheguei*, it is now going on four months since I came hither.

*Em* before *quanto*, and sometimes without it, is rendered into English by *while* or *whilst*; as *em quanto vos fazeis aquillo eu farei isto*, while you do that I shall do this: but if they are followed by a noun of time with an interrogation, then they must be rendered into English by *in how much*, or *many*; as, *em quanto tempo?* in how much time? You must



observe, that *em quanto a mim, ati, elle, &c.* are rendered into English by *for what concerns me, thee, him, &c.*

You must observe, that *no* serves for the masculine, *na* for the feminine, and *em* for both.

*Em* signifies *as*; as, *em final da sua amizade*, as a token of his friendship; *em premio*, as a reward.

The prepositions *em, no, na, &c.* and *dentro*, have very often the same signification, therefore they may sometimes be used one instead of the other; as, *está na gaveta*, or *dentro da gaveta*, it is in the drawer; *está na cidade*, or *dentro da cidade*, he is in town.

*Em* before the words *favor, utilidade, consideração, razão*, and the like, signifies *in behalf of, for the sake of, on account of, &c.* as, *em razão das bellas acções que elle tem feito*, in consideration of the great things he has performed.

Observe, that they very often make an elision of the last vowels, *o, a*, of the preposition *no, na*, when there is a vowel in the beginning of the next word; as, *n'agoa* instead of *na agoa*; they also cut off the *e* of the preposition *em*, and change the *m* into *n*, as you may see in *Camoens*, Canto 2. Stanza xxxii. *n'algum porto* instead of *em algum porto*, wherein you must observe that *n'* is to be Englished by *to* or *into*.

### Com.

VII. This preposition signifies *with*, and it denotes conjunction, union, mixing, assembling, keeping company; as, *casar huma donzella com hum homem honrado*, to marry a maid with an honest man; *ir com alguem*, to go with one; *com a ajuda de Deos*, by God's help, &c.

Observe, that most of the adverbs formed of the adjectives are turned in Portuguese by the preposition *com* and the substantive; as, *atrevidamente*, boldly, *com atrevimento*, with boldness; *elegantemente*,



*mente*, elegantly; *com elegancia*, with elegance; *cortezmente*, politely, *com cortezia*, with politeness, &c.

You must observe, that the last consonant *m* is very often cut off, even before the noun of number *hum*, one; and so they say *cum*, instead of *com hum*, as you may see in *Camoens*, Cant. 2. Stanza xxxvii.

Note that *with me*, *with thee*, *with himself*, &c. are rendered into Portuguese by *commigo*, *contigo*, or *convosco*, *comfigo*, *comnosco*, *convosco*, *comfigo*.

When *com* is preceded by *para*, it signifies *towards*, and sometimes *over*, in English; as, *sejamos piedosos para com os pobres*, let us be merciful towards the poor. *Ter grande poder para com alguem*, to have a great influence over some body's mind.

*Com* before the word *capa* is used metaphorically, and then it signifies *under colour*, or *pretext*.

### *Para.*

VIII. *Para* is rendered into English by *for*; but it signifies also *to*, when it is found before the infinitive, and denotes the intention, or purpose in doing something; as, *este livro he para meu irmão*, this book is for my brother; *esta penna he para escrever*, this pen is to write; *Deos nos fez para amalo*, God made us for to love him; *o comer he necessario para conservar a vida*, eating is necessary for preserving life.

*Para que* is rendered into English by *for what*; as, *para, que he isto?* for what is this? and sometimes by *that*, or *in order that*; as, *para que venha verme*, that he may come and see me. But *porque* signifies *why*, *for what*, *upon what account*, as, *porque não vindes?* why don't you come? but when it is not followed by an interrogation, it signifies *because*.

*Para* serves likewise before the verbs, to denote what one is able to do in consequence of his present disposition; as, *elle he bastantemente forte para andar a cavallo*, he is strong enough to ride; *elle tem ba-*



*stante cabedal para sustentar-se*, he has means enough to maintain himself; *a occasião he muito favoravel para nos não servir-mos della*, the occasion is too favourable to let it slip.

*Para* expresses also the capacity or incapacity of doing any thing; as, *elle he homem para isto*, he is the proper man wanted for this; *he homem para pouco*, he is good for little; *he homem para nada*, he is good for nothing.

This preposition is also used to denote the end or motive of doing any thing; as, *trabalho para o bem publico*, I work for the public good; *hum hospital para os pobres*, an hospital for the poor.

*Para* is a preposition of time; as, *isto me basta para todo o anno*; this is sufficient to me for all the year; *esão unidos para sempre*, they united for ever; *para dois meses era muito pouco*, for two months it was too little.

*Para* is sometimes preceded by the adverb *lá*, and followed by a noun of time, and then it is Englished by *against* or *towards*; as, *lá para o fim da semana*, against the end of the week, or towards the end of the week.

*Para* is sometimes Englished by *considering*, or *with respect to*; as, *este menino está muito adiantado para a idade que tem*, or *para o pouco tempo que aprende*, this child is very forward for his age, or considering the little time he has learned; *para Inglez falla demasiadamente*, he talks too much considering that he is an Englishman.

*Para* signifies sometimes *just* or *ready to*; as, *elle está para partir*, he is just going away, he is ready to go.

*Para* is also used before the word *graças*: as, *elle não he para graças*, he takes no jest; *elle não está para graças*, he is out of humour, or he is in an ill humour.

*Para onde?* signifies *whither?* *to what place?*

*Para*



*Para que?* or *para que fim?* signifies *to what end* or *purpose?* *Para cima* signifies *upward*.

*Para huma e outra parte*, signifies *to both sides, places, or parts*.

*Para* is also Englished by *towards*, and is said of places; as, *para o oriente*, *towards, or to the east*.

*Para onde quer que*, signifies *whether, or to what place thou wilt, any whither*.

*Para outra parte*, signifies *towards another place*.

*Para comigo*, *towards me*.

*Para o diante*, signifies, *for the time to come*.

*De mim para mim*, signifies *for what concerns me*.

*Para* is used by Camoens, Cant. 2. Stanza xxiv. before the preposition *detráz*, and signifies *backwards*.

*Para* between two nouns of number is Englished by *or*, and sometimes by *and*; as, *hum homem de quarenta para cincoenta annos*, a man between forty and fifty; *distá quatro para cinco legoas*, it is about four or five leagues distant.

### Por.

IX. *Por*, *pello*, *pella*, *pellos*, or *pellas*, signify *for*; as, *por amor de vos*, *for your sake*; *por seis semanas*, *for six weeks*; *palavra por palavra*, *word for word*.

*Polo* and *pola* instead of *pelo* and *pela*, are out of use.

*Por* sometimes denotes that the thing is not yet done; as, *esta obra está por acabar*, *this work is not yet finished*.

*Per*, *by*, *for*, *over*, or *through*; as, *alcancei-o por empenho*, *I obtained it by protection*; *eu vou por dinheiro*, *I am going for money*; *passéo pellos campos*, *I walk through the fields*; *por todo o reino*, *all over the kingdom*.

When *por* is before an infinitive, and followed by a negative, in the latter part of the sentence, it is Englished by *although*, or *though*; as, *por ser devota, or por devota que seja, não deixa de ser*



*ser molher*, though she is a religious woman, yet she is a woman; *por ser pobre*, or *por pobre que seja não deixa de ser soberba*, though she has no fortune, she is nevertheless, or for all that, proud. Wherein you see, that the negative with the verb *deixar*, are rendered into English by the verb *to be*, and the particles *nevertheless*, *yet*, &c. You must observe that they sometimes put the words *nem por isso* before the verb *deixar*, but the sense is the same, and you may as well say, *por ser pobre nem por isso deixa*, &c.

*Por* followed by an adjective and the particle *que* with a verb in the subjunctive mood, is rendered into English by *never so*; as, *por grande que elle seja*, let him be never so great; *por pouco que seja*, never so little.

*Por* before *menos*, signifies *far less than*, or *under*; as, *um<sup>ce</sup> não o terá por menos de vinte libras*, you shall not have it under twenty pounds.

*Por* before *quanto*, with an interrogation, signifies *for how much*, *at what rate*? But if there is no interrogation, as in the following and the like sentences, then it is to be Englished by *for never so much*; as, *não o faria por quanto me dessem*, I would not do it for never so much.

*Por* before *cima* signifies *upwards*, and before *baxo* is Englished by *downwards*; as, *e remedio obra por cima e por baxo*, the medicine operates, or works, upwards and downwards.

*Por* before *pouco*, *muito*, *bem*, &c. and followed by *que*, makes a sort of conjunction governing the subjunctive, and is Englished by *if*, followed by *ever* or *never so little*, *much*, *well*, &c. as, *por pouco que erreis*, if you do amiss never so little; *por bem que eu faça*, if I do never so well, &c.

*Por* before *mim* signifies sometimes *as for*, or *for all*; as, *por mim estou prompto*, as for me, or, for my part I am ready; *per mim podeis dormir se quizerdes*, you may sleep for all me.

*Por,*



*Por, pello, pella, &c.* denote the efficient cause of a thing, as also the motive and means, or ways of doing; in all which significations they are Englished by *by, through, out of, at, &c.* as,

*A Asia foi conquistada por Alexandre,* Asia was conquered by Alexander.

*Vos fallais nisso so porenveja,* it is out of envy only you speak of it.

*Elle entrou pella porta, mas sabio pela janella,* he got in at the door, but he got out at the window, &c.

*Por* denotes place, after the verbs *ir* and *passar*; as, *por onde ireis vos?* which way shall you go?

*Eu passarei por França,* I'll go through France; *por onde passou elle?* which way did he go?

*Por* contrued with nouns without an article, denotes most times *distribution of people, time, and place*; and it is Englished by *a, or every*, before the noun; as,

*Elle deu tanto por cabeça,* he gave so much a head.

*Tanto por soldado, por anno, por mes, por semana, &c.* so much a soldier, a year, a month, a week; *a razão de vinte por cento,* at the rate of twenty per cent.

*Elle pede tanto por legoa,* he asks so much a league, or every league.

*Por*, between two nouns without an article, or between two infinitives without a preposition, denotes the choice which one makes between two things, alike in their nature, but different in their circumstances; as,

*Casa por casa antes quero esta que aquella,* since I must have one of these two houses, I like this better than that; *morrer por morrer melhor he morrer combatendo qui fugindo,* when a man must die, it is better to die in fighting than in running away.

*Pello meyo* is rendered into English by *through*; as, *pello meyo dos campos,* through the fields.

*Por meyo* is rendered into English by *by*; as, *elle alcançou o seu intento por meyo de astucias,* he has compassed his ends by device.

*Por*



*Por turno* signifies *in one's turn*.

*Por* before the infinitives is used instead of *para* by the best Portuguese writers; and *porque* instead of *para que*; as you may see particularly in *Camoens*, Canto 2. Stanza VII. and VIII. and in the following example, *por não*, or *para não repetir o que já temos dito*, not to repeat what we have already said.

*Por* is sometimes Englished by *for*, *upon the account of*, *for sake*, &c. as, *elle fará isto por amor de vos*, he will do this upon your account, *or* for your sake; *deixara-o por morto*, he was left for dead: *eu tenho-o por meu amigo*, I take him to be my friend; *todos os homens de bem são*, or *estão por elle*, all honest people are for him, *or* are on his side; *por quem me tomais vos?* who do you take me for?

We have already observed, that *porque* without an interrogation signifies *because*; but it has the same signification in the following sentence and the like; *porque elle he mentiroso segue-se que tambem eu o seja?* because he is a liar, does it follow therefore that I am one?

*Por isto*, or *por esta razão* signifies *therefore*.

*O porque* signifies the reason, the cause, or the subject; as, *sabe-se o porque?* is it known upon what account?

*Por modo de dizer* signifies, *as one may say*, *if I*, or *we*, *may say*, &c.

*Por diante* signifies *before*; and *por detraz* signifies *behind*.

*Por ventura* signifies *perhaps*.

*Pello passado*, signifies *formerly*, *in time past*, *heretofore*.

*Por nenhum caso*, by no means.

*Por mar e por terra*, by sea and land.

*Hum por hum* signifies *one by one*.

*Por* is sometimes Englished by *in*; as, *elles são vinte por todos*, they are twenty in all.

When the verb *passar* is followed by *por* and the word *alto* signifies *to forget*; as, *passou lhe aquillo por alto*,  
etc,



*alto*, he forgot that ; but speaking of goods it signifies *to smuggle*.

*Por* joined with the verb *ir*, signifies *to fetch*, and *seek after* ; as, *vai por vinho*, go fetch some wine ; *vai pello medico*, go see for the physician.

*Por* is commonly used before the substantives ; as, *por exemplo*, for example ; *por commodidade*, for conveniency ; *por costume*, for custom sake ; and many others, that may only be learned by use.

You must observe, that *pello* serves for the masculine, *pella* for the feminine, and *por* for both.

### *Contra.*

X. *Contra* (against, contrary to), denotes opposition ; as, *que diz vme contra isto?* what do you say against this ? It signifies also *overagainst*, *opposite to*.

*Pro e contra*, signifies in English *pro and con*.

### *Desde.*

XI. *Desde*, denotes both time and place, and enumeration of things, and is commonly followed in the sentence by the preposition *até* (*to*) ; then *desde* denotes the term *from whence*, and *até* that of *hitherto* ; as,

*Desde o principio até o fim*, from the beginning to the end.

*Elle foi a pé desde Windsor até Londres*, he walked from Windsor to London.

*Eu tenho visto todos desde o primeiro até o ultimo*, I have seen them all from first to last ; *forão todos mortos desde o primeiro até o ultimo*, they were all slain to a man.

*Desde a criação do mundo*, from or since the creation.

*Desde o berço, ou infancia*, from the cradle, from a child.

*Desde*



*Desde ja, even now; as, desde ja prevejo, I even now foresee.*

*Desde agora, from this time forward.*

*Desde então, from that time ever since.*

*Desde que, as soon as, when.*

*Desde quando? how long since, or ago?*

*Rio navegavel desde o seu nascimento, a river navigable at its very rise.*

*Até.*

XII. *Até* signifies *till, even, to, &c.* as you may see in the following examples.

*Até onde? how far?*

*Até Roma, as far as Rome.*

*Até quando? till when, or how long?*

*Até que eu viva, as long as I live.*

*He hum homem de tanta bondade, que até os seus inimigos são obrigados a estimalo, he is so good a man that even his enemies have a value for him.*

*Até os mais vis homens tomavaõ a liberdade de, &c. the very worst of men took such a liberty as to, &c.*

*Até que, u. til, till.*

*Até as orelhas, up to the ears.*

*Elle vendeo até a camisa, he has sold the very shirt off his back.*

*Até agora or até aqui, till now, or hitherto.*

*Até aqui, (speaking of a place) to this place, hither, so far.*

*Até lá, to that place, so far.*

*Até tanto que isto se faça, till it be done.*

*Até então, till then, till that time.*

*Até* is also used before an infinitive; as, *gritar até enrouquecer*, to bawl one's self hoarse.

*Rir até arrebentar pellas ilbargas*, to split one's sides with laughing.

*Dar de comer a alguém até arrebentar*, to fill or cram one with victuals till he bursts.

*Até*



*Até á primeira*, till our next meeting, till we meet again.

*Por cima.*

XIII. *Por cima* (above, over), denotes superiority of place; as,

*Morar por cima de alguém*, to live or lodge above somebody.

*A balla lhe passou por cima da cabeça*, the ball went over his head.

*Por cima de tudo*, upon the whole.

*Para cima.*

XIV. *Para cima* (above) denotes superiority of age; and is sometimes put at the end of the sentence; as,

*Elles alistaraõ todos que tinhaõ de dez annos para cima*, they enlisted every body above ten.

*A cima.*

XV. *A cima* (above) denotes rank, and some moral subjects; as,

*A cima delle*, above him, or superior to him.

*Estar a cima de tudo*, to be above the world.

*Huma molher que está a cima de tudo, nem se lhe dá do que o mundo diz della*, a woman who is above the public's censure, who don't care what people say of her.

*Em cima.*

XVI. *Em cima* (upon); as *em cima da mesa*, upon the table.

*Em cima de tudo isto*, or only *em cima*, signifies and besides all that, over and above all that.

*De cima.*

XVII. *De cima*, when it is an adverb, signifies from above; but when a preposition, it is Englished by from, off, or from off; as,

*Tirai*



*Tirai aquillo de cima da mesa,* take that from off the table.

*Elle nunca tirou os seus olhos de cima della,* he never turned his eyes from her.

*Cahir de cima das arvores,* to fall off the trees.

### *Debaxo.*

XVIII. The preposition *debaxo*, (*under, below, or from under*) denotes the time and place; I say the time of a denomination of a reign, or government; as, *debaxo do imperio de Augusto*, under the empire of Augustus.

*Debaxo*, as a preposition of place, marks out inferiority of position; as,

*Tudo o que há debaxo dos ceos*, all there is under heaven;

*Ter huma almofada debaxo dos joelhos*, to have a cushion under the knees.

*Estar debaxo da chave*, to be under lock and key.

*Debaxo* is sometimes rendered into English by *upon*; as, *affirmar huma cousa debaxo de juramento*, to swear to a thing, to declare upon oath.

### *Abaxo.*

XIX. This preposition is rendered into English by *under, inferior, or next*; as, *assentou-se abaxo delles*, he sat inferior, or under them; *assentou-se logo abaxo de mim*, he sat next inferior to me, or he was the next man to me; *abaxo del rey elle he o primeiro*, he is the next man to the king.

This preposition is sometimes put at the end of the next phrases, *de telhas abaxo*, here below, in this lower world; *de cabeça abaxo*, headlong.

### *Fora.*

XX. *Fora*, (*cut, without, except, but,*) denotes exclusion, and exception. It requires generally a genitive before a noun of time, or place; but it governs also the nominative; as,

*Fora*



*Fora do reyno*, out of the kingdom.

*Fora da cidade*, out of town.

*Fora de tempo*, out of season.

*Procurai-o fora de casa*, look for him without doors.

*Elles sabiraõ todos, fora dous ou tres*, they all went out except, or but, two or three.

*Elle lhe permite tudo, fora o ir ás assembleas*, he indulges her in every thing, but in going to assemblies.

*Elle tem todos os poderes, fora o de concluir*, he has full powers, except of concluding.

*Fora* is sometimes preceded by *taõ*, and then it is to be rendered into English by *so far*; as, *elle está taõ fora de socorrer os seus alliados, que se declara contra elles*, he is so far from assisting his allies, that he declares himself against them.

*Fora* is sometimes rendered into English by *besides*; as, *fora daquelles que, &c.* besides those that, &c. and sometimes by *beyond*; as, *fora de medida*, beyond measure.

*Fora de horas* signifies *beyond the hour*, or *very late*.

*Pôr alguém fora da porta*, or *mandar alguém pella porta fora*, to turn one out of doors.

*De frente*, or *fronte*.

This preposition governs the genitive, and signifies *over-against*. It is followed by *de*, *do*, *da*, &c. as,

*De frente da sua casa está hum outeiro*, over-against his house is a hill.

*Eu estava de frente d'elle*, I was over-against him.

*Sem*.

*Sem* signifies *without*; as,

*Sem dinheiro*, without money.

*Sem duvida*, without doubt.

*Sem fim*, without end.

*Sem dar a entender*, or *sem fazer conbecer*, as though he did not.



*Sem mais nem menos*, without any reason, or provocation.

*Estar sem amo*, to be out of place.

*Sem que algum acto precedente possa derogar o presente*, any former act to the contrary of the present notwithstanding.

*Sem* governs also the infinitive, which is rendered into English with the participle; as, *fallar sem saber*, to speak without knowing.

It is also a conjunction with *que*, governing the subjunctive; as,

*Enfada-se sem que lhe digaõ nada*, he is angry without any body saying any thing to him.

*Não era eu já bastantemente infeliz, sem que procurasse de acrescentar a minha infelicidade?* was I not miserable enough before, but you must still labour to make me more so?

*Lembro-me sem que me digais*, I remember without your telling.

*Elle virá sem que mandem por elle*, he will come without sending for.

*Conforme*, or *segundo*.

XXIII. *Conforme* or *segundo* (according to, conformable to), govern the nominative, and never the dative as in English; as,

*Elle foi tratado conforme o seu merecimento*, he was treated according to his deserts.

*Conforme o meu parecer*, in my judgment, in my opinion.

In common conversation *conforme* is used adverbially, and Englished as follows:

*Isso he conforme*, or only *conforme*, it is as it happens; may be yes, may be not; that is according.

*Conforme a occasião o pedir*, according as there shall be need.

*Sobre*.

XXIV. *Sobre* signifies upon; as, *sobre a mesa*, upon the table; *sobre o rio*, upon the river.

*Sobre*



*Sobre tudo*, or *sobre todas as cousas*, over all, above all, above all things, above any thing, especially ; as, *sobre tudo tende cuidado na saude*, but howsoever the matter be, mind your health.

*Pôr alguém sobre si*, or *dar lbe o primeiro lugar*, to place one above himself.

*Ir sobre huma cidade*, to besiege a town.

*Ir sobre alguém*, to fall or to rush upon one.

*Ir sobre seguro*, to go upon sure grounds.

*Sobre a noite*, about or towards the evening.

*Sobre o verde*, somewhat green.

*Sobre a minha palavra*, upon my word.

*Sobre palavra*, upon parole.

*Mandar carta sobre carta*, to send letter upon letter.

*Elle recebeu a carta sobre jantar*, he had just dined when he received the letter.

*Elle dorme sobre jantar*, he sleeps presently after dinner.

*Sobre isto*, or *sobre estas cousas*, is sometimes Englished by *more than that*, or *besides that* ; as,

*Elle roubou-o e sobre isto matou-o*, he robbed him, and, more than that, he killed him.

*Sobre que*, is rendered into English by *though* or *although* ; as,

*Este negocio sobre que he difficuloso, não he impossivel*, altho' this is a hard affair, yet it is not impossible.

*Sobre* is Englished sometimes by *besides* ; as,

*Sobre as misérias da guerra, elle teve a desgraça, &c.* besides the miseries of the war, he had the misfortune of, &c.

*Estar sobre si*, or *andar sobre si*, signifies to stand upon one's guard.

*Eu vos escreverei sobre esta materia*, I will write to you about this matter.

### *Acerca.*

XXV. *Acerca* signifies *about* ; as, *acerca disto lbe disse*, about this I told him ; *acerca de lá ir lbe respondi*, about going there I answered him.



*Perto, junto, ao pé, pegado.*

XXVI. *Perto* (near by, about) denotes proximity of place and time, and governs the genitive case; as *aquillo está muito perto do lume*, that is too near the fire; *perto das oito horas*, about eight o'clock.

*Perto do rio*, near the river.

*Estamos perto do Natal*, we are near Christmas.

*Ao pé* requires also the genitive case; as,

*Assentaivos ao pé de mim*, sit down by me, or near me; *ao pé do rio*, near the river, &c.

Note, that *junto* (near or by) and *pegado* (hard by) require the dative case; as,

*Junto á cidade*, near the town.

*Pegado ao palacio*, hard by the palace.

*Longe.*

*Longe*, far, a great way off, governs the genitive, and the particle *de*, or *do*, *da*, &c. as,

*Longe da casa*, far from home.

*Longe daqui*, far from hence.

*De longo, or ao longo.*

This preposition requires the genitive case; as,

*Ao longo da praya*, along the shore.

*Ao longo da costa, do prado, &c.* along the coast, the meadow, &c.

*Of further Particles.*

*Ainda, ainda que, postoque or quando bem, ainda assim or com tudo.*

*Ainda* signifies yet; as, *elle ainda não veyo*, he is not come yet. It signifies also even; as, *seria vergonha ainda o fallar nisso*, it were a shame even to speak of it; *nem ainda por cem libras*, no not for a hundred pounds.

*Ainda que* signifies though, or alibough; as, *ainda que vos sois mais velho do que elle*, though you be older than he; *ainda que assim fesse*, though it were so.

*Ainda*



*Ainda que*, is very often followed by *com tudo*, yet for all that; as, *ainda que elle não tivesse necessidade disso, com tudo, &c.* though he had no need of it, yet, &c.

*Ainda assim*, or *com tudo*, is sometimes Englished by *nevertheless*, or *for all that*; as *ainda assim sempre elle foi louvavel*, he was praise-worthy for all that.

*Ja desde, ja que* and *ja por que*.

*Ja desde* is rendered into English by *even from*; as *ja desde o principio*, even from the beginning.

*Ja que* signifies *since*; as,

*Ja que isso assim he*, since it is so.

The particle *que* sometimes is not placed immediately after *ja*; as *ja ha deus annos que morreo*, he died two years since, or ago.

*Ja ha muito tempo que sabistes de casa*, it is a long time since you went from home.

*Ja por que*, is repeated in the same sentence, and then the first is rendered into English by *first, because*; and the second by *secondly, because*; as *ja por que era cego, ja por que era coxo*, first because he was blind, and secondly because he was lame.

*Depois que*,

*Depois que* is rendered into English by *after*; as, *Depois que eu vinha entrado*, after I was gone in.

*Com que*.

*Com que* is only a note either of introduction, or connexion; as,

*Com que havia hum homem enfermo, &c.* now a certain man was sick; sometimes they add to it the particle *assim*, and then it is to be rendered into English by *and so*.

*Ou*.

*Ou* signifies *or, or either*; as, *ou bom ou mau*, either good or bad; *mais ou menos*, more or less; *ou elle queira ou não*, whether he will or no.



*Quer.*

*Quer*, when a particle must be repeated, and the first is rendered into English by *either*, or *whether*, and the second by *or*; as, *quer elle queira quer não*, whether he will or no; *quer vos o tenhaes feito quer não*, whether you have done that or no.

*Se quer, or ao'menos.*

*Se quer, or ao menos*, &c. signifies *at least*, *however*; as, *se vos não quereis ser por elle não se jais se quer contra elle*, if you don't chuse to be for him, at least don't oppose him: *dai lbe se quer com que sustentar-se*, give him at least a subsistence; *o nosso primeiro fim he de livrarnos de todos os males, ao menos dos mayores*, our chief end is to be freed from all, however the greatest evils.

*Nem se quer hum*, is rendered into English by *never a one*, *so much*, or *in the following manner*; as, *forão todos mortos, e nem se quer hum escapou*, they were all slain to a man.

*Quando muito.*

*Quando muito*, (at most, at farthest, at long run,) is generally used before the nouns of time and price; as, *elle estará aqui dentro em hum mez quando muito*, he will be here in a month at farthest; *dez libras quando muito*, ten pounds at most.

*Tanto.*

*Tanto*, so much, is sometimes followed by *como*, and then it is rendered into English by *as well as*, *as much as*, &c. as,

*Amo-te tanto como a mim mesmo*, I love thee as well as myself.

*Elle teme tanto como qualquer de vos, que lbe resulte algum dano*, he is afraid of harm as much as any of you.

*Cuidei*



*Cuidei que a estimasse tanto como a si mesmo*, I thought he made as high account of her as of himself.

*Elles vem tanto de dia como de noite*, they can see as well by day, as by night.

*Eu tive tanto como vos*, I had as much as you.

*Outro tanto* is rendered into English by, *the double*, *twice as much*, or *as much*; as,

*Eu alcancei outro tanto mais por isso*, I had as much more for it; *eu posso fazer outro tanto*, I can do as much.

*Tanto* followed by *assim* is a particle merely expletive; as,

*Tanto assim que lbe posso eu fazer?* how can I help it; *vaite, tanto assim não ha nada para ti*, go away, there is nothing for you.

*Tanto assim* followed by *que* without an interrogation, is sometimes rendered by *so that*, in *so much that*; as, *tanto assim que elle não quer ouvir mais fallar nisso*, so that he will hear no more of it.

*Tanto mais* is followed by *que*, and Englished by *and the more so* as, as

*Eu estou prompto para ir com vme hum dia destes á comedia, se vme quizer. Tanto mais que se deve representar huma nova*, I am at your service to wait on you some day or other to the play, if you'll give me leave; and the more so, as a new one is to be acted.

*Tanto que*, or *logo que*, is rendered into English by *as soon as*; as, *tanto que eu o vi*, as soon as I saw him.

*Tanto melhor* is rendered into English by *so much the better*.

*Tanto* is sometimes preceded by *com*, and followed by *que*, and is Englished by *so*, *provided that*; as, *com tanto que o façais*, provided that you do it: *com tanto que me não faça mal*, so he do me no hurt.

*Tanto quanto* is Englished by *as much as*; as,

*Tanto quanto posso*, as much as I can.

*Tão*.

*Tão*, so, is generally followed by *como*; as,



*Este não he tão bom como o outro*, this is not so good as the other; *eu sei isso tão bem como vos*, I know it, as well as you.

*Tão* is sometimes followed by *que*, and Englished by *so*, *such*, *to that degree*; as,

*Elle he tão prudente que não tem igual*, he is so wise that he has not his match: *não sou tão louco que o creya*, I am not so simple, or I am not such a fool as to believe it; *faz tão grande vento que*, &c. the wind is so high, that, &c. *or* the wind blows to that degree, &c.

*Como.*

*Como*, is Englished by *as*, *like*, *bow*, &c. as you may see in the following expressions.

*Como?* how?

*Dizeime como lhe hei de fallar?* tell me how I may speak to him?

*Como assim?* how so?

*Como!* what!

*Como quer que*, whereas.

*Como quer que seja*, howsoever, in what manner, or fashion soever.

*Seja como for*, be it as it will.

*Como isto assim he*, since it is so.

*Como*, as it were, or almost.

*Como se*, as if, or even as if; as, *como se elles tivessem ja vencido*, as if they had already overcome.

*Como tambem*, as well as.

*Rico como elle he*, as rich as he is.

*Como fois meu amigo, quero*, &c. as (or because) you are my friend, I'll, &c.

*Dizeime o como*, tell me how.

*Eu sei como fazer para que elle venha*, I know the way I shall take to make him come.

*Como elle lá não esteja, eu irei*, provided he is not there I will come.

*Assim.*



*Assim.*

*Assim*, so, thus, is rendered into English as you may see in the following expressions.

*Pois be assim de veras? de veras que assim be*, is it even so? it is even so.

*Assim seja*, or *seja assim*, so be it, or be it so.

*Assim be*, it is so.

*Para assim dizer*, as it were.

*Assim sou eu tolo, que, &c.* I am not so foolish as to, &c.

*Assim Deos me salva*, as I hope to be saved.

*Tanto assim*, so that.

*Assim be que vos, &c.* is this your way, &c.

*Assim como assim*, after all, nevertheless, or for all that; as, *em vão dilatais a vossa jornada, assim como assim be preciso que vades*, it is in vain for you to put off your journey, you must go thither nevertheless, or for all that, you must go after all.

*Assim como*, as well as, or as soon as.

*Basta assim por agora*, thus much for this time.

*Assim na paz, como na guerra*, both in time of peace and war.

*Assim assim*, so so, indifferent.

*Assim queira elle como pode*, he can if he will.

*Assim* is sometimes preceded by *e*; as, *e assim que quer isto dizer?* how now? what do you mean by this? And sometimes *assim* is followed by *como*; as, *assim como o sol eclipsa os outros planetas, da mesma sorte, &c.* as the sun eclipses the other planets, so, &c.

*Se.*

*Se*, if; as *se elle vier*, if he comes; *se me amásseis*, should you love me; *se elle fosse homem de honra*, were he but an honest man; *se soubessem quem eu sou, todos diriaõ, &c.* were it told who I am, every one would say, &c. *se be verdade que, &c.* if so be that, &c.



The reciprocal verbs, as well as those that are used impersonally, may have two *se*'s joined together; as, *se se for*, if he goes away; *se se falla nisso*, if they speak of it.

*Se* is sometimes rendered into English by *whether*; and when it is repeated, the second is Englished by *or*; as,

*Quisera saber se a culpa he nossa, se vossa*, I would know whether it is your fault, or ours.

### *Aliás.*

*Aliás* is sometimes rendered into English by *else*; as, *entraí porque aliás fecharei a porta*, come in, or else I'll shut the door; *porque aliás seriaõ os vossos filhos immundos*, else were your children unclean. And sometimes it is rendered into English by *otherwise*, in other things, or respects.

### *Embora.*

*Embora* is sometimes rendered into English by *prosperously*, *auspiciously*: but sometimes it is a particle merely expletive, and answers to the Italian *pure*; as, *dizei muito embora o que quizerdes*, say what you please: the Italian says, *dite pur quel che vi piacerà*.

*Muito embora, seja assim*, well, let it be so.

*Embora* is sometimes Englished by *away*: as, *vaite embora*, go away.

### *Senaõ.*

*Senaõ* signifies *if not*, *did not*, *were it not that*, *but that*; as,

*Senaõ tivesse medo de meu pay*, but that I fear my father.

*Se elle não tivesse vergonha de confessar*, but that he was ashamed to confess.

Note, that the following expressions, in which they make use of this particle, may be Englished by *but*, *for*, and some other variations.

*Senaõ fosse por elle*, but for him, or had it not been for him, or had he not been.

*Senaõ*



*Senaõ fosse por vos*, had you not been, or had it not been for you, without you, without your help, hindrance, &c.

*Senaõ fosse por mim elle morreria de fome*, were it not for me, he would starve.

*Senaõ* is sometimes Englished by *but*; as, *nem elles tem outro intento, senaõ*, &c. nor do they aim at any thing else but, &c.

*Ninguem disse assim senaõ Cicero*, nobody said so but Cicero.

*Senaõ* may be also expressed in Portuguese by *mais que* in the following sentence, and the like.

*Elle não faz senaõ jogar*, or *elle não faz mais que jogar*, he does nothing but play.

*Não, não porque.*

*Não*, not, or no, when followed by *porque*, is Englished by *not that*, *not but that*; as, *não porque lhe faltasse engenho*, not but that he had wit; *não porque não fosse justo, mas porque*, &c. not but that it was right, but because, &c. *não porque a cousa seja impossivel, mas porque*, &c. not that the thing is impossible, but because, &c.

*Tambem, or outrossi.*

*Tambem*, or *outrossi*, signifies also, too, likewise; as *vos assim o quereis e eu tambem*, you'll have it so, and I too.

*Para que, porque.*

See the prepositions *para* and *por*.

*Pois.*

This particle is very much used by the Portuguese, and it is rendered into English several ways, as you may see in the following examples.

*Pois ide, evinde logo*, go then and come back presently.

*Pois não sou eu capaz de fazello?* what, am I not capable to do it?

*Pois,*



*Pois*, or *pois entãõ que quer dizer isto?* well, and what of all this?

*Pois*, or *pois entãõ que hei de fazer?* What shall I do then?

*Pois eu digo que elle está dentro*, why, he is here within, I say.

*Pois porque me vigiais?* why then do you watch me?

*Elle tem cabeça; pois tambem hum alfinete a tem*, he has got a head, and so has a pin.

*Pois* before *naõ*, and preceded by an interrogation, denotes a strong assertion, and is Englished by *without doubt, yes, surely, to be sure, &c.* as, *virá elle? pois naõ!* will he come? yes to be sure.

*Antes*, or *mais depressa*.

These particles are sometimes rendered into English by *rather* or *sooner*; as, *antes or mais depressa quizerá morrer*, I would rather die; *antez quizerá viver só que na vossa companhia*, I would sooner live alone than be in your company. Sometimes *antes* is Englished by *before*; as, *Ide vos antes que elle venha*, go away before he comes; *antes que eu morra*, before I die.

*Mas antes, pelo contrario, mas pelo contrario*.

These particles are rendered into English by *on the contrary, on the other hand, nay*; as, *mas antes, mas pelo contrario*, or *pelo contrario isto he muito diferente*, nay it is quite another thing; *mas antes, pelo contrario, &c. elle he avarento*, nay, or on the contrary he is a covetous man.

*Para melhor dizer*.

This phrase is rendered into English by *nay*; as *elle tem ja bastante, ou para melhor dizer, mais do necessario*, he has already enough, nay too much; *A isto he que nos chamamos direito das gentes, ou para-melhor dizer, da razãõ*, this is what we call the law of nations,



nations, which may be called more properly the law of reason.

*Que.*

We have already observed that *que* is a particle which most conjunctions are composed of; as *ainda que*, although; *de sorte que*, so that, &c.

The particle *que* sometimes is the sign of the third persons of the imperative, as *let* in *English*; as, *que falle*, let him speak; *que riaõ*, let them laugh.

*Que* is used between two verbs, to determine and specify the sense of the first, as *eu vos asseguro que assim he*, I assure you that it is so; *duvido que assim seja*, I doubt whether it is so or no.

*Que* is also used after *bora* in the beginning of a sentence, and followed by a verb in the subjunctive, to denote by exclamation one's surprize, aversion, and reluctance of something; in which case there is a verb grammatically understood before *que*; as *bora que se esquecesse elle de si mesmo!* I wonder, or is it possible for him to have forgot himself!

The exclamation, or admiration, is sometimes expressed without any verb; as, *que gosto; e no mesmo tempo que pena!* how much pleasure and trouble at once!

*Que* is sometimes repeated; as,

*Que bellos livros que tendes!* what fine books you have got! *que bella que he a virtude!* how beautiful is virtue!

*Que* is sometimes followed by *de*; as, *que de loucos ha no mundo!* how many fools there are in the world!

*Que* is used after nouns denoting time, and is sometimes Englished by *when* or *since*, &c. and sometimes left out; as,

*O dia que elle partio*, the day when he set out.

*Quanto tempo ha que estais em Londres?* how long have you lived at London? how long is it since you lived at London?

*Ha dez annos que faz a mesma coisa*, he has done the same thing these ten years.



*Há dez annos que morreo*, he died ten years ago.

*Que* is sometimes rendered into English by *because*, as you may see in Camoens canto 2. Stanza xvi. *que levemente hum animo*, &c. and sometimes by *that*, *to the end that*, *in order to*; as you may see *ibid.* Stanza xvii. *que como vissem*, *que no rio*, &c.

*Que* before *se* in the beginning of a sentence, is a redundancy not expressed in English; as *que se vos dizeis que*, &c. if you say that, &c.

*Que* is used after the conjunction *a penas* (scarce or hardly), and is Englished by *but*; as, *a penas acabou de fallar que logo morreo*, he had hardly done speaking but he expired.

*Que* sometimes is preceded by *de sorte*, *de maneira*, *de geito*, and then it is Englished by *so that*, *in such a manner*, *insomuch that*; as, *eu o farei de sorte que fiqueis contente*, I will do it so that, or in that manner that, you shall be contented.

#### *De veras.*

*De veras* signifies *in earnest*; but sometimes it is Englished by *no sure*; as, *de veras! não o posso crer*, no sure!

#### *Hora.*

*Hora*, or *cra*, is an interjection that serves to encourage, as we have seen above; but when it is repeated, it is Englished by *sometimes*, *one while*, *another while*; as, *ora está bem ora está mal*, sometimes he is well, sometimes ill; *elle ora está de hum parecer e ora de outro*, he is now of one opinion, and next moment of another. *Por ora* signifies *now*, *for the present*.



C H A P. VIII.

*Of the Portuguese Orthography; and first of Capitals and Stops.*

I. **T**HE proper names, as well as the surnames, always begin with a capital.

II. The names of nations, kingdoms, and provinces, also begin with a capital; as, *Francêz*, French; *Inglex*, English, &c.

III. All names of dignities, degrees, and honours, require a capital; as, *Rey*, *Bispo*, &c. King, Bishop, &c.

IV. At the beginning of a period, as well as of a verse, the first letter is always a capital.

V. The names of arts and sciences, as well as those of kindred, begin with a capital.

*Of Stops.*

The use of stops, or points, is to distinguish words and sentences.

The Portuguese have six stops, or pauses, viz.

1. The *ponto final*, the same as our period or full stop (.), and is used at the end of a period, to shew that the sentence is completely finished.

2. The *dous pontos*, which is our colon (:), and is the pause made between two members of a period; that is, when the sense is complete, but the sentence not ended.

3. The *ponto e virgula*, our semicolon (;) and denotes that short pause which is made in the subdivision of the members or parts of a sentence.

4. The *ponto e interrogaçam*, the point of interrogation thus (?)

5. *Ponto e admiraçam*, the point of admiration thus (!)

6. The *virgula*, the same with our comma (,) and is the shortest pause or resting, in speech, being used chiefly to distinguish nouns, verbs, and adverbs, as also the parts of a shorter sentence.

The



The conjunction *e*, the relative *qual*, and the disjunctions *ou* and *nem*, require a comma before them.

The Portuguese make use also of a parenthesis, thus ( ); but they do not make use of the diæresis, called by the printers *crema* (··); they make use also of the *angulo*, thus  $\wedge$ , called by the printers *caret*.

The apostrophe, or, as they call it, *viracento*, likewise takes place in this as in other languages, being designed only for the more pleasant and easy pronunciation of words, by cutting off an antecedent vowel; as, *d'armas*, *d'elvas*, and not *darmas*, *delvas*, &c. But this is somewhat excusable in cases wherein, by usage, they seem to be one word; as, *nesta*, *nesta*, *desta*, *deste*, *nalgum*, *daquelle*, *nello*, *nella*, *d aqui*, *dali*, *atequi*, *ategora*; and not *em elle*, *de elle*, &c.

#### *Of the Accents.*

The accent, which is the very soul of articulated words, is a sound of the voice by which we pronounce some syllables shorter, others longer.

I intend to speak here only of the accents the Portuguese ought to make use of, according to *Madureira*, in his *Portuguese Orthography*.

The Portuguese indeed are acquainted with three accents, but they ought to make use of two only, namely, the acute, which descends from the right to the left (´), and the circumflex, thus (^).

1. The acute serves to prolong the pronunciation, and is put, according to *Madureira*, on the third person singular of the future tense; as, *amará*, *lerá*, &c.

2. On the penultima of the preterpluperfect tense of the indicative mood; as, *amára*, *ensinára*, &c.

3. The acute accent ought to be put also on the penultima of the third persons of the present tense of the verbs *renunciar*, *pronunciar*, *duvidar*, &c. thus *renuncia*, *pronuncia*, *duvida*, &c. that they may  
be



be distinguished from the nouns *renúncia*, *pronúncia*, *dúvida*, &c. The same accent is also put on *está*, *nó*, to distinguish them from *esta*, this, and *no*, in the.

The vowel *o* has two sounds, according to the two accents that may be put on it; one open, when it is marked with the acute accent, and it is pronounced like *o* in *store*; the other close, when it is marked with the circumflex accent, and then it is pronounced like *u* in *stumble*.

There are many nouns, both substantive and adjective, which are accented in the singular with the circumflex, and in the plural with the acute; and the adjectives that have two terminations, particularly those ending in *oso*, *osa*, must be accented (in the singular) with the circumflex in the masculine, and with the acute in the feminine; as,

*Fôgo*, fire; plural, *fógos*.

*Fôrno*, oven; plural, *fórnos*.

*ôlho*, eye; plural, *ôlhos*.

*ôvo*, egg; plural, *óvos*.

*ôsso*, bone; plural, *óssos*.

*Pôço*, well; plural, *póços*.

*Pôrco*, hog; plural, *pórcos*.

*Rôgo*, prayer; plural *rógos*. And so *fújo*, *tôrno*, *formôso*, *sequiôso*, *suppôsto*, *pôvo*, *tôrto*, *tórta*, *copiôso*, *copiôsa*, &c.

The following keep the circumflex accent in both numbers: *bôlo*, *bôlos*; *bôjo*, *bôjos*; *bôto*, *bôtos*; *côco*, *côcos*; *chôro*, *chôros*; *côto*, *côtos*; *fôrro*, *fôrros*; *gôrdo*, *gôrdos*; *gôsto*, *gôstos*; *gôzo*, *gôzos*; *lêbo*, *lêbos*; *môço*, *môços*; *nôjo*, *nôjos*; *pôtro*, *pôtros*; *tôlo*, *têlos*; *ferrôlho*, *ferrôlhos*; *rapôso*, *rapôses*; *arrôz*, *arrêzes*; *algôs*, *algôzes*, &c.

On the contrary, the following keep the acute accent in both numbers: *cópo*, *cópos*; *módo*, *módos*; *nóssô*, *nóssos*; *vóssô*, *vóssos*, &c.

When the accent circumflex is put on the *ê*, then the *e* is pronounced like the French masculine *e*; but when *e* is accented with the acute accent, then



the *e* is to be pronounced like the *e* open in French, and it is exceeding sonorous and long. See the pronunciation of the vowel *e*.

The nouns ending in *az*, *iz*, *oz*, *uz*, must have the acute accent on the vowel before the *z*; as, *rapáz*, a boy; *noz*, a walnut; *alcaçúz*, liquorice: but you must except *arróz*, rice; *algóz*, a hang-man.

Nouns ending in *ez* generally have the circumflex accent; as, *mêz*, a month; *marquéz*, a marquis; &c. except the surnames; as, *Alvarez*, *Antunez*, *Lopez*, *Henriquez*, *Gonçalves*, *Rodriguez*, *Perez*, *Nunez*, *Tellez*, &c.

### *Some Observations upon the Portuguese Orthography.*

Both the Portuguese orthographers and best authors vary so much in their rules and ways of writing, that it is a hard matter, and quite out of any grammarian's way, to clear up this part of the Portuguese grammar; since it requires no less authority than that of the Royal Portuguese Academy. However, not to omit such a material part of the Grammar, I shall present the learners with the following observations.

I. When the Latin words which the Portuguese are derived from, begin with a *b*, the Portuguese likewise must begin with it; therefore you must write and pronounce the *b* in the following words, *bom*, *bondade*, *bem*, *bento*, &c. because they are derived from *bonus*, *bonitas*, &c. But you must except *bainha*, *bexiga*, *bairro*, which begin with a *b*, though they are derived from *vagina*, *vesica*, *vicus*.

II. Likewise if the Latin words begin with a *v*, the Portuguese words derived from them must also begin with it; as, *vida*, *viver*, *varrer*, *ver*, *vinho*, &c. from *vita*, *vivere*, *verrere*, *videre*, *vinum*, &c.

Though *b* ought to be pronounced only by closing the lips, and *v* by touching the superior teeth with the inferior lips; yet, by a certain affinity between



tween these two letters, in speaking there is a great confusion in the pronunciation of them in the province of *Entre Douro e Minho*: and this confusion has not been peculiar to the Portuguese language, because *Nebrixa* says, in his *Castilian Orthography*, that in his time some Spaniards could hardly make any distinction between these two letters.

III. The *p* found in some words originally Latin, is changed in Portuguese into a *b*; as, *cabra*, *cabêllo*, *cabeça*, &c. from *capra*, *capillus*, *caput*, &c.

IV. The Portuguese generally make use of the *y* in the following words: *ay*, *rey*, *frey*, *ley*, *may*, *pay*, *mayo*, *meyo*, and some others.

*Bluteau* says, that we must make use of the *y* in words having a Greek origin; as, *syllaba*, *Chrysopeia*, *pyramide*, *polygono*, *hydrographia*, *hydropico*, *physica*, *hyperbole*, *hypocrita*, *Apocrypho*, &c.

V. The *ph* are used by the Portuguese in some words taken from the Greek; as, *philosophia*, *philologia*, *philadelphia*, *epitaphio*, &c.

VI. The *r* in Portuguese has two pronunciations, one soft, expressed by a single *r*, as in *arádo*, a plough; and after the consonants *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *p*, *t*; and another hard, in which two *rr* are used; as in *barro*, *carro*, &c. But you must observe,

1. That in the beginning of a word two *rr* must never be used, because then the *r* is always pronounced hard in Portuguese; as in the words *remo*, *rico*, *roda*, &c.

2. When the consonants *l*, *n*, *s*, are before the *r*, either in a single word, or a compound, this letter must never be doubled, because then its sound is always strong; as in *abalroar*, *enriquecer*, *bonra*, *desregrado*, *Henrique*, *Israelita*, &c.

3. The *r* after a *b* is also pronounced hard in compounds with the prepositions *ab*, *cb*, *sub*, and yet is not doubled; as in *abrogar*, *obrepção*, *subrepção*.

VII. The *s* is never doubled in the beginning of words, nor after the consonant; therefore you



must write *sarar*, *saber*, *falsamente*, *falso*, *manso*, &c.

The *s* is pronounced like *z* between two vowels, in words derived from the Latin, as well as in those that end in *ôsa* and *ôso*; as, *musa*, *caso*, *riso*, *amorôso*, *cuidadôsa*, *casa*, &c. You must also observe, that *cofer* signifies *to sew*, but *cozer* signifies *to boil* or *bake*.

VIII. *Th* are generally used in words derived from the Greek; as, *amphitheatro*, *atheista*, *theologo*, *lethargo*, *metbodo*, &c.

*Th* is also used in the Portuguese preposition *até*; though some write it thus, *até*.

IX. When *pt* is found in Latin words, it must be kept in the Portuguese derived from them; as, *apto*, *inepto*, *optimo*, &c. from *aptus*, *ineptus*, *optimus*, &c. You must make the same observation about *et*.

X. *Ch* is sounded like *k* in words derived from the Greek; as, *archanjo*, *archiduque*, *Chrysostomo*, *chrysol*, *chrisologo*, *Christovaô*, *monarchia*, &c. These words must be written with *ch*, in order to preserve to the eye the etymology of words.

Note, that *ch* in words that are not derived from the Greek, is pronounced like *ch* in the English words *church*, *chin*, *much*, &c. but as some confound the *ch* with the *x*, and begin with *x* those words that should begin with *ch*, I thought it necessary to make a collection of them.

*Words beginning with ch.*

Chá  
Chaa  
Chaca  
Chacina  
Chaco  
Chacota  
Chafariz  
Chaga  
Chalupa  
Chama  
Chamalote

Chamar  
Chamariz  
Chambaô  
Chamejar  
Chamiza  
Chamine  
Chamufcar  
Chança  
Chancela  
Chancelaria  
Chanceler

Chançoneta



Chançonêta  
 Chanquêta  
 Chantágem  
 Chantrado  
 Chantre  
 Chaõ  
 Chápa  
 Chapádo  
 Chapeádo  
 Chapelêta  
 Chapéo  
 Chapîm  
 Chapinhar  
 Chapûz  
 Charaméla  
 Charameleiro  
 Chárco  
 Charnéca  
 Charneira  
 Charóla  
 Chárpa  
 Chárro  
 Charrûa  
 Chásco  
 Chafôna  
 Chatim  
 Cháto  
 Chavaõ  
 Chavaſcál  
 Cháve  
 Chávêlha  
 Chavêta  
 Chavinha.

## C H E.

Chêa, *or* Cheya  
 Chêſe  
 Chegar  
 Cheirar, *and its derivatives*  
 Cherívia  
 Chérne.

## C H I.

Chiar  
 Chibarro  
 Chibo  
 Chîcharos

Chichárro  
 Chichélos  
 Chicória  
 Chicóte  
 Chífra  
 Chífrar  
 Chifre  
 Chilindraõ  
 Chilrar  
 Chimbéo  
 Chincar  
 Chinceiro  
 Chinchôrro  
 Chinéla  
 Chiqueiro  
 Chispa  
 Chispar  
 Chifte  
 Chîta.

## C H O.

Chóça  
 Chóca  
 Chocalhar  
 Chocálho  
 Chocar  
 Chocarrear  
 Chocarríce  
 Chôco, *and* Chócos  
 Chocoláte  
 Chôfrado  
 Chófre  
 Chóldabolda  
 Chóque  
 Chorar  
 Chorrilho  
 Chôrro  
 Chover  
 Choupa  
 Choupana  
 Choupo, *or* Chôpo  
 Chouriço  
 Choutar.

## C H U.

Chûça  
 Chupamel  
 Chupar



Chuchurriar  
 Chûço  
 Chûfa  
 Chumáço  
 Chumbar  
 Chûmbo  
 Churriaõ

Churûme  
 Chusma  
 Chúva  
 Chuveiro.  
 C H Y.  
 Chypre.

The following words begin with *ce* and not *se*.

Cêa  
 Ceado  
 Ceár.

C E B.

Cebôla  
 Cebolal  
 Cebolinho.

C E D.

Cedavim  
 Cedéla  
 Cedenho  
 Ceder  
 Cedilho  
 Cêdo  
 Cédro  
 Cédula.

C E G.

Cega  
 Cegar  
 Cégo  
 Cegonha  
 Cegûde  
 Cegueira

C E I.

Ceifa  
 Ceifaõ  
 Ceiraõ  
 Ceirinha  
 Ceivar.

C E L.

Celáda  
 Celebraç õ  
 Celebrar  
 Célebre  
 Celéste

Celestial  
 Celestrina  
 Celeusma  
 Celga  
 Celha  
 Celho  
 Celibado  
 Celibáto  
 Celícola  
 Celidonia  
 Cella  
 Celleiro  
 Celleireiro  
 Celtas.

C E M.

Cem  
 Cemiterio.

C E N.

Cenáculo  
 Ceno  
 Cenóbio  
 Cenobitico  
 Cenotáphia  
 Cenoura  
 Cenrada  
 Cenreira  
 Cenfo  
 Censôr  
 Censura  
 Censurado  
 Censurar  
 Centauro  
 Centêna  
 Centeal  
 Centesimo

Centeyo



Centeyo  
Cento  
Centóculo  
Centopea  
Central  
Centro  
Centuplo  
Centuria  
Centuriaō  
Céo.

## C E P.

Cepa  
Cepilho  
Cepo  
Ceptro.

## C E R.

Cera  
Ceraferario  
Cerbero  
Cerca  
Cercado  
Cercar  
Cercador  
Cercadura  
Cérce  
Cerceádo  
Cercear  
Cercillo  
Cerco  
Cerdofo  
Cérebro  
Cereijas  
Cereijal  
Ceremonia  
Ceremonial  
Cerieiro  
Cérne  
Cernelha  
Cerol  
Ceroulas  
Cerqueiro  
Cerração

Cerrar  
Cerralheiro  
Cerrálho  
Cerrarse  
Cerro  
Cérta  
Certo  
Certāa  
Certeza  
Certidaō  
Certificar  
Cerva  
Cerval  
Cervêja  
Cervilhas  
Cerviz  
Cerúda  
Ceruleo  
Cervo  
Cerzir.

## C E S.

Cesar  
Cesarea  
Cesma  
Cesmaria  
Cesmeiro  
Cessaō  
Cessacaō  
Cessar  
Cesta  
Cestinha  
Cestinho  
Cesteiro  
Cesto  
Cesura.

## C E V.

Ceva  
Cevada  
Cevadal  
Cevadeira  
Cevadouro  
Ceyar.

O 4

Cezaō



## C E Z.

Cezaõ

Cezimbra.

N. B. *Cerrar* signifies *to shut*, or *shut up*; but *ferrar* signifies *to saw*, to cut timber or other matter with a saw.

The following words must have *ci*, and not *si*, in their beginning.

	C I A.	Cilhas	
Ciarfe		Cilhar	
Ciática.		Cilícia	
	C I B.	Cilício	
Ciba		Cilladas.	
Cibalho			C I M.
Ciboria.		Cima	
	C I C.	Cimalha	
Cicatriz		Cimbalo	
Cicero		Cimeyra	
Ciciofo.		Cimento	
	C I D.	Cimitarra	
Cidadaõ		Cimo.	
Cidadaõs			C I N.
Cidade		Cinca	
Cidadôa		Cincar	
Cidra		Cincho	
Cidrada		Cinco	
Cidraõ		Cincoenta	
Cidreira.		Cingidouro	
	C I E.	Cingir	
Ciencia.		Cingulo	
	C I F.	Cinnamômo	
Cifar		Cinta	
Cifra		Cintillar	
Cifrar.		Cintura	
	C I G.	Cinza	
Cigâna		Cinzento	
Cigano		Cinzeiro.	
Cigarra			C I O.
Cigúde		Cão	
Cigurelha.		Ciôsa.	
	C I L.	Ciôso	
Cilada			C I P.



C I P.

C I S.

C I R.

C I U.

C I Z.

Cipó  
Cipreste  
Cipriano.

Ciranda  
Cirandagem  
Cirandar  
Circo  
Circulaçaõ  
Circular  
Circulo  
Circuito  
Circumcidar  
Circumcisaõ  
Circumferencia  
Circumspecto  
Circumspecçaõ  
Circumstancia  
Circumstantes  
Cîrio  
Cirurgîa  
Cirurgiaõ  
Cirzir.

Ciscar  
Cisico  
Cisma  
Cismatico  
Cisne  
Cisterciense  
Cisterna  
Citaçaõ  
Citádo  
Citar  
Citerior  
Cithara  
Citharédo  
Citrino  
Cível  
Civíl  
Civilidade.

Ciûme  
Ciumes.

Cizânia  
Ciziraõ.

XI. No Portuguese word begins with *ço*; but according to *Madureira*, there are some that begin with *ça* and *çu*; as, *çapato*, *çapateiro*, *çargaço çuja*, *çugidade*, *çumo*, *çurra*, *çurrar*, and some others.

The *ç* is used after *p* in those Portuguese words that have in their Latin root *pt*; as, *descripçaõ*, *accepçaõ*, &c. from *descriptio*, *acceptio*, &c.

*Of Double Letters.*

It is to be generally observed, that the consonants are doubled in those Portuguese words, whose Latin roots have likewise the same double consonants; as, *acelerar*, *accento*, *occidente*, &c. from *accelero*, *accentus*, *occidens*, &c. *affligir*, *affluencia*, *affirmaçaõ*, &c. from *affligo*, *affluentia*, *affirmatio*, &c. as you will see in the following collections.

*B is*



## B.

*B* is to be doubled in *abbade, abbacial, abbadia, abbadeffa, abbreviatura, abbreviar*, and some others.

## C.

*C* is to be doubled in the following words, and some of their derivatives.

## A.

Abstracção  
Acção  
Accento  
Acçentuar  
Accepção  
Acceita  
Acceitação  
Acceitador  
Acceitar  
Accessão  
Accessível  
Accesso  
Accessório  
Accidental  
Accidente  
Accelerada  
Accelerado  
Accelerar  
Acclamação  
Acclamar  
Accommodação  
Accommodado  
Accommodar  
Accumulação  
Accumulado  
Accumular  
Accusação  
Accusado  
Accusador  
Accusar  
Accusativo  
Adstricção  
Afflicção  
Attracção.

## B.

Baccho  
Bocca  
Boccaça  
Boccadinho  
Bocado  
Boccal.

## C.

Circumspecção  
Coacção  
Cocção  
Collecção  
Constricção  
Construcção  
Contracção  
Correcção.

## D.

Decocção  
Deducção  
Desjecção  
Desôccupação  
Desoccupado  
Desoccupar  
Detracção  
Dicção  
Dictionario  
Direcção  
Distracção.

## E.

Eccentrico  
Ecclesiastico  
Erecção  
Evicção  
Exacção  
Extracção.

Facção



F.

Fácção  
Ficção  
Fracção.

I.

Impeccabilidade  
Impeccavel  
Inaccessível  
Indicção  
Inducção  
Infecção  
Infracção  
Inspeção  
Instrucção  
Intellecção  
Interjecção  
Intersecção  
Introducção.

M.

Manuducção.

O.

Objecção  
Obstrucção  
Occasão  
Occasionar  
Occáso  
Occidental  
Occidente  
Occiduo  
Occisão  
Occorrer  
Occultamente  
Occultado  
Occultar  
Occulto  
Occupação  
Occupado  
Occupar  
Occurrencia  
Occurrente.

P.

Peccado  
Peccadôr

Peccadôra  
Peccante  
Peccar  
Predicção  
Preoccupar  
Producção  
Projecção  
Protécção  
Putrefacção.

R.

Rarefacção  
Reconducção  
Refecção  
Refracção  
Resecção  
Restricção.

S.

Satisfacção  
Seccar  
Secco  
Secção  
Seccura  
Sôcco  
Soccôrre  
Soccorro  
Subtracção  
Succeder  
Successão  
Succêso  
Successivo  
Successível  
Successôr  
Succintamente  
Succinto  
Sûcco  
Succoso  
Sûccubo.

T.

Transacção  
Traducção.

V.

Vacca  
Vaccáda  
Vaccum.

D.



## D.

This letter is doubled in the following words:  
*addição, adicionado, adicionar, additamento, additar.*

## F.

*F* is to be doubled in

Affabilidade

Affável

Affadigado

Affadigar

Affagádo

Affagar

Affágos

Affamádo

Affamar-se

Affastádo

Affastar

Affazendádo

Affazer-se.

## A F F E.

Affeádo

Affear

Affeamento

Affectadamente

Affectádo

Affectar

Affécto

Affectuoso

Affeição

Affeiçãoado

Affeiçãoar

Affeite

Affeitar

Affeminado

Affeminarse

Afferradamente

Afferrado

Afferrar

Afferretoado

Afferretoar

Afferrolhado

Afferrolhar

Afferventado

Afferventar

Affervorado

Affervorar.

## A F F L

Affiádo

Affiar

Affidalgádo

Affidalgar-se

Affigurado

Affigurar

Affilháda

Affilhado

Affiladôr

Affilar

Affinado

Affinar

Affincado

Affincar

Affirmadamente

Affirmadôr

Affirmar

Affistular-se

Affixar.

## A F F L.

Affamar-se

Afflicção

Afflicto

Affligir

Affluencia.

## A F F O.

Affocinhar

Affogado

Affogádo



Affogadôr  
Affogar  
Affogamento  
Affogueado  
Affoguear  
Afforâdo  
Afforador  
Afforâr  
Afforamento  
Afformentar  
Afformoseádo  
Afformosear  
Affoutado  
Affoutar  
Affouteza  
Affouto

A F F R.

Affracar  
Afframengado  
Affreguelado  
Affreguesarse  
Affronta  
Affrontado  
Affrontamento  
Affrontar  
Affrontosamente  
Affrontoso  
Affroxadamente  
Affroxado  
Affroxar.

A F F U.

Affugentado  
Affugentar  
Affumado  
Affumar  
Affundado

Affundarse  
Affundirse  
Affuzillar.

D I.

Diffamado  
Diffamar  
Diferença  
Diferençar  
Diferenças  
Diferente  
Diferentemente  
Difficil  
Difficuldade  
Difficultar  
Difficultosamente  
Difficultoso  
Diffusão  
Diffusamende  
Diffuso.

E.

Effectivamente  
Effectivo  
Efeito  
Efeituar  
Efficazmente  
Efficacia  
Efficaz  
Efficiente  
Effigie.

O.

Offender  
Offerecer  
Offuscar.

S.

Suffocar  
Suffragio, *and some others.*

G.

This letter is to be doubled in

Aggravante  
Aggravar  
Aggravado  
Aggrávo  
Aggressôr  
Exaggeração

Exaggerador  
Exaggerado  
Exaggerar  
Suggerir  
Suggestão  
Suggerido.



## L.

L is to be doubled in

## A B.

Aballado  
Aballador  
Aballar  
Aballo  
Aballifado  
Aballifadôr  
Aballifar.

## A C.

Acafellador  
Acafelladura  
Acafellar  
Acallentado  
Acallentar  
Acapellado.

## A F.

Affillado  
Affillador  
Affillar.

## A L.

Allegação  
Allegado  
Allegar  
Allegoria  
Allegórico  
Allegorifar  
Alleluia  
Alliviar  
Allucinação  
Allucinar  
Alludir  
Allumiar  
Allufaõ.

## A M.

Amantellado  
Amarello  
Amarellecerse  
Amarellidaõ  
Amollado  
Amollar  
Amollecere  
Amollecido

Amollentar  
Ampôlla.

## A N.

Annulação  
Annular.

## A P.

Appellação  
Appellante  
Appellar.  
Appellidar  
Appellido.

## A Q.

Aquella  
Aquêlle  
Aquelloutro  
Aquillo.

## A R.

Armellas  
Arrepellado  
Arrepellaõ  
Arrepellar.

## A T.

Atropellado  
Atropellar.

## A V.

Avillanado.

## B A.

Bacellada  
Bacêllo  
Barbélla  
Barrélla.

## B E.

Bella  
Béllamente  
Bello  
Belleza.  
Belleguim  
Béllico  
Bellicôso.  
Belligero  
Belluino.



## B U.

Bulla  
Bullário.

Collateral  
Collecção  
Collecta

## C A.

Calliope  
Camillo  
Cavillação  
Cavillofamente  
Caballina  
Cadélla  
Cadellinha  
Callo

Collectivo  
Collectôr  
Colléga  
Collegiada  
Collegial  
Collégio  
Colligar  
Colligir  
Collyrio

Camartello  
Cambadella  
Cancella

Collo  
Collocação  
Collocar  
Colloquio.

Capella  
Capellaõ  
Capelláda  
Capellania

## C O M.

Compellir  
Compostéila  
Constellação  
Corrollario  
Covello  
Courella.

Capello  
Capillar  
Castella

Castello  
Casullo

## D E.

Casulla  
Cavalla  
Cavallaria  
Cavaileiro  
Cavállo.

Della  
Dellas  
Delle  
Delles  
Degollado  
Degollação  
Degollar  
Degolladouro.

## C E.

Cebôlla  
Cebollál  
Cebollinho  
Chancellér  
Chancellaria  
Célla  
Celleiro.

## D I.

Distillação  
Distillador  
Distillar.

## C L.

Clavellina.

## D O.

Donzélla.

## C O.

Codicillo  
Colla  
Collado  
Collar  
Colleira  
Collaçaõ

## D U.

Duéllo.

## E B.

Ebullição.

## E L L.

Ella

Ellas



Ellas

F L.

Elle

Flagellante

Elles

Flagello.

Elléboro

F O.

Ellipse

Folle

Elíptico.

Folículo

E M.

Fontello.

Emolliente

G A.

Emollir.

E N.

Enallage

Gabella

Encapellado

Gallado

Encapellar

Galladura

Encastellado

Gallar

Encastellar

Gallego

Encelleirar.

Gália

E Q.

Gallicado

Equipollencia

Gallicar

Equipollente.

Gallico

E S.

Gallinha

Escabellado.

Gallinhaço

Escabello

Gallinheira

Escudélla

Gallinheiro

Escudellaõ

Gallinhólla

Estillaçaõ

Galliópoli

Estilládo

Galliota

Estillar

Galliza

Estillicidio

Gálo

Estrella

Gamella

Estrellado.

Gazella.

G O.

E X.

Golla.

Excellencia

H E.

Excelente

Hellesponto

Expellir.

Hendecasyllabo

F A.

Hollanda

Falla

Hypallage.

J A.

Fallacha

Janella

Fallacia

Janelleira

Fallador

Janellinha

Fallar

Jarmello.

Fallecer

I.

Fallecido

Illaçaõ

Fallencia

Illaquear

Fallido

Illativo

F E.

Illegitimo

Ferdizello

Illiciador



Iléso  
 Illicar  
 Illiciador  
 Illicitamente  
 Illicito  
 Illocavel  
 Illudido  
 Illudir  
 Illuminaçãõ  
 Illuminado  
 Illuminar  
 Illuminativo  
 Illusaõ  
 Illuso  
 Illustraçãõ  
 Illustrar  
 Illustre  
 Illustrissimo  
 Illyrio  
 Imbella  
 Impellir  
 Incapillato  
 Infallivel  
 Inintelligivel  
 Intervallo.

L.

Libello  
 Lordello  
 Loufella.

M.

Marcella  
 Marcellina  
 Marcello  
 Martellada  
 Martellar  
 Martello  
 Martellinho  
 Malfallante  
 Mallogrado  
 Mamillar  
 Medulla  
 Mellifluo  
 Mello  
 Metallico  
 Millenário  
 Millesimo

Mirandella  
 Miscellania  
 Molle  
 Molleira  
 Molleza  
 Mollice  
 Mollidaõ  
 Mollificânte  
 Mollificar  
 Mollinar  
 Monosyllabo.

N.

Nella  
 Nellas  
 Nelle  
 Nelles  
 Nigélla  
 Novélla  
 Novelleiro  
 Nulla  
 Nullidade  
 Nullo  
 Nuzellos.

O.

Odivellas  
 Ollarâ  
 Olleiro  
 Ouguella.

P.

Palla  
 Palládio  
 Pallante  
 Pallas  
 Palliado  
 Palliar  
 Pallidez  
 Pallido  
 Pallio  
 Paradella  
 Parallaxe  
 Parallelo  
 Parallelogramo  
 Pelle  
 Pellefinha  
 Pellica

P

Pellicula



Pellicula  
 Panella  
 Pimpinella  
 Phillis  
 Pollegada  
 Pollegar  
 Pollez  
 Polluçaõ  
 Polluro  
 Polysyllabo  
 Portacóllo  
 Portélla  
 Postilla  
 Pousafolles  
 Prunélla  
 Pulmella  
 Pupilla  
 Pupillo  
 Pusillanimidade  
 Pusillanime.

Q.

Quartella.

R.

Rabadélla  
 Rebellado  
 Rebellaõ  
 Rebellarse  
 Rebelliaõ  
 Rélla  
 Rodofólle  
 Rodopello  
 Rosélla  
 Ruélla.

S E.

Sella  
 Sellado  
 Sellador  
 Sellagaõ  
 Sellar  
 Selleiro  
 Sello  
 Sentinella  
 Sibylla  
 Sigillo  
 Sigillado

Sobrepelliz  
 Sugillaçaõ  
 Syllaba  
 Syllabático  
 Syllábico  
 Syllogisar  
 Syllogismo.

T.

Tabélla  
 Tabelliaõ  
 Tabelliôa  
 Titillaçaõ  
 Titillar  
 Tôlla  
 Tollice  
 Tollo  
 Torcicóllo  
 Tranquillidade  
 Tranquillo  
 Trella  
 Trisyllabo  
 Tunicella  
 Tullio.

V.

Vacillaçaõ  
 Vacillante  
 Vacillar  
 Valla  
 Vallado  
 Vallar  
 Valle  
 Vassallagem  
 Vassallo.

V E.

Velleidade  
 Vellicaçam  
 Vellicar  
 Vello  
 Velloso  
 Vellúdo  
 Verdefélle.

V I.

Villa  
 Villania

Villa-



Villaāmente  
Villaō  
Villaā

Vitella  
• Vitellino.

N. B. *Annular* signifies to *annul*; but *annular* is an adjective, and signifies *annular*, or in the form of a ring. *L* is doubled by some in the words *pelo*, *pe!a* (for), thus *pello*, *pella*.

M.

*M* is to be doubled in

Accommodar  
Commemoraçaō  
Commenda  
Commenſurar  
Commentar  
Commerciar  
Committer  
Comminaçaō  
Commiseraçaō  
Commiſſaō  
Commiſſario  
Commoçaō  
Commodo  
Commover  
Communum  
Commungar  
Communicar  
Comunidade  
Commutar  
Conſummar  
Deſaccommodar  
Deſcommodo  
Dilemma.  
Emmadeirar  
Emmadeixar  
Emmagrecer  
Emmanquecer  
Emmaſſar  
Emmudecer  
Engommar  
Epigramma.  
Flamma  
Flammante

Flāmmula.  
Gemma  
Gomma  
Grammatica.  
Immaculada  
Immanente  
Immarceſſivel  
Immaterial  
Immaturro  
Immediatamente  
Immemoravel  
Immenſo  
Immenſuravel  
Immobilidade  
Immoderadamente  
Immodesto  
Immodico  
Immolar  
Immortalisar  
Immortificado  
Immóvel  
Immudavel  
Immundo  
Immunidade  
Immutavel  
Incómodo  
Incommunicavel  
Incommutavel  
Inflammar.  
Mamma  
Mammar.  
Recommendar.  
Sômma



Sommar  
Summa  
Summario

Summidade  
Symmetria, and some others.

N. B. *M*, and not *n*, is always to be made use of before *b*, *m*, *p*.

### N.

*N* is likewise doubled in several verbs compounded with *an*, *en*, *in*, *con*; as, *annelar*, *annexa*, *annaõ*, *annata*, *annel*, *Anna*, *anno*, *annular*, *connexaõ*, *connexo*, *depennar*, *empennar*, *ennastrar*, *ennegrecer*, *innato*, *innavegavel*, *innocencia*, *manná*, *Marianna*, *panno*, *penna* when it signifies a pen, *tyranho*, and some others.

### P.

This letter is to be doubled in words beginning with *p* compounded with the Latin prepositions *ad*, *ab*, *sub*; as, *apparato*, *apparecer*, *oppôr*, *opprimir*, *suppor*, *Philippe*, *pospa*, &c.

N. B. *Pappa* signifies *pap*, or a sort of spoon-meat for children; but *papa* signifies *the pope*.

### R.

The *r* is doubled in such words as are strongly pronounced in the middle; as, *guerra*, *arrancar*, *arredar*, *arrimar*, *arruinar*, *carregar*, *carro*, &c.

### S.

The *s* is to be doubled in the Portuguese superlatives, because it is doubled in the Latin roots; it is also doubled in the following words:

•Abbadêssa  
Baronêssa  
Condêssa  
Priorêssa  
Assar  
Assanhar  
Asslegurar  
Assignar  
Assular

Accesso  
Aggressor  
Aprestar  
Amassar  
Arremessar  
Assaltar  
Assleyo  
Assessor  
Assim

Assistir



Affatir	Nossa
Aflombrar	Essa
Afloprar	Esse
Aflobiar	Isto
Aflustar	Osso
Atravessar	Passar
Neceffitar	Passar
Niffo	Remessa
Noffo	Ingreffo, and many others.

T.

T is doubled in the following words and their derivatives :

Attemperar	Committer
Attenção	Demittir
Attender	Enfittar
Attentar	Fitta
Attenuação	Intrometter
Attenuar	Omittir
Attónito	Permittir
Attracção	Prometter
Attractivo	Remetter
Attrahir	Remittir
Attribuir	Sétta
Attributo	Settenta
Attrição	Settecentos
Attrito	Transmittir.

*Of the Quantity of Syllables, and their Sound.*

*Of Words that make their penultima in a.*

N. B. You must remember what we have said above about the accents.

All words ending in *abo, aba, aco, aca, achô, acha, aço, aça, ado, ada, afo, afa, ago, aga, agem, agre, albo, alba, alo, ala*, have the penultimas long; *as, diábo, mangába, macáco, macáca, caváca, mingácho, garnácha, madráço, linháça, amádo, punháda*, (except *relâmpago, antropófago, levado*, and *cágado*, which are short in the penultima), *abáfo, abáfa, jaramágo, adága*, (except *estâmagô or estômago, âmagô, anáracô*,



*amáraco*, which are short), *trabálho*, *toálba*, *badálo*, (except *anomalo*, *búfalo*, *escândalo*, which are short), *sanchágem*, *vinágre*.

Words ending in *amo*, *ama*, *anho*, *anba*, *ano*, *ana*, have their penultima long; as, *escámo*, *couráma*, *castánho*, *aránka*, *engano*, *pestána*; except *pámpano*, *tympano*, *bígamo*.

Words ending in *apo*, *apa*, *aque*, *aro*, *ara*, have their penultima long; as, *guardanapo*, *solapa*, *basbaque*, *empáro*, *seára*; except *cántaro*, *púcaro*, *lápáro*, *búfaro*, *lúparo*, *pífaro*, *pícaro* *cámera*, *támara*, *pássaro*, *Lázaro*, *barbaro*, *cócaras*, &c.

Words ending in *arro*, *arra*, *alo*, *ata*, *avo*, *ava*, *axo*, *axas*, make the penultima long; as, *bizárro*, *bizárra*, *biscáto*, *pataráta*, *escravo*, *escrava*, (except *concava* and *bisavô*), *cartaxo*, *tarraxa*.

#### *Of Words that make their Penultima in e.*

All words ending in *ebo*, *eba*, *cdo*, *eda*, *efa*, have their penultima long; as, *mancêbo*, *mancêba*, *azêdo*, *azêda*, *sanefa*.

Words ending in *eje* are long; as, *magarêje*: as well as those ending in *eco*, *eca*, *eço*, *eça*; as, *bonêco*, *bonêca*, *cabêço*, *cabêça*.

Words ending in *eco*, *ega*, are long; as, *morcêgo*, *socêgo*, *relêgo*, *entrega*, *trêgo*; except *conego*, *tráfego*, *córrigo*, *sófrego*, *picego*, *pego*, *bárega*, *cócegas*.

Words ending in *ejo*, *je*, *elo*, *ela*, are long; as, *caranguejo*, *bocejo*, *igreja*, *alentejo*, *enrêja*, *martelo*, *querêla*.

Words ending in *emo*, *ema*, *eno*, *ena*, are long, as, *supremo*, *postema*, *acezo*, *acucena*; except *apózema*.

N. B. The penultima is short in the word *ingreme*.

Words ending in *epo*, *epa*, *epe*, *eque*, *ero*, *era*, are long; as, *dícepo*, *carêpa*, *julêpe*, *mêque*, *sevéro*, *severa*, *tempero* (when a noun), and *tempéro* (when a verb): except *áspero*, *próspero*.

Words ending in *eso*, *esa*, *ezo*, *eza*, *eto*, *eta*, *ete*, *evo*, *eva*, *eve*, are long; as, *acejo*, *acesa*, *desprezo*,  
gran-



*grandéza*, and *despréso* (when a verb), *entremêto*, *galbêta*, *ramalbête*, *bosete*, *atrêvo*, *atrêva*, *atrêve*.

*Of words that make their penultima in i.*

Words ending in *ibo*, *iba*, *ibe*, *icho*, *icha*, *iche*, *ico*, *ica*, *iço*, *iça*, *ice*, *ido*, *ida*, *ifo*, *ifa*, *ife*, have the penultima long; as, *estríbo*, *arríba*, *arríbe*, *esguícho*, *esguicha*, *azevíche*, *paníco* (a sort of stuff), *botica*; except *mecánico*, *ecuménico*, *critico*, *político*, *pánico* (panick), and some others borrowed from the Greek and Latin. In *iço*, *iça*, &c. as, *rolíço*, *preguiça*, *velhice*, *marido*, *medida*; except *búmido*, *pálido*, *hórrido*, and some others derived from the Latin. In *ifo*, *ifa*, &c. as, *borrifo*, *alcatífa*, *patife*.

Words ending in *igo* and *iga* are long; as, *amigo*, *amiga*; except *pródigo*, *prodiga*.

Words ending in *ijo* and *ija*, are long; as, *afflijo*, *artemija*.

Words ending in *ilko*, *ilba*, are long; as, *atilbo*, *beatilba*. Others ending in *ilo*, *ilba*; as, *gorgemílo*, *perfíla*, *desfíla*.

Words ending in *imo*, *ima*, have the penultima long; as, *opímo*, *cadimo*, *esgríma*, *lastíma* (when a verb); except *lastima* (when a noun), *Jeronimo*, *pés-simo*, and all the superlatives, *anónimo*, and some others.

Words ending in *inko*, *inha*, *ino*, *ina*, *ipo*, *ipa*, *ipe*, have the penultima long; as, *conslípo*, *conslípa*, *Eurípo*, *acipípe*. Others in *iquo*, *iqua*, *ique*, *iro*, *ira*, *ire*; as, *iníquo*, *iníqua*, *lambíque*, *retíro*, *mentíra*, *suspíre*.

Words ending in *iso*, *isa*, *izo*, *iza*, *ito*, *ita*, *ivo*, *iva*, *ixo*, *ixa*, are long in the penultima; as, *avíso*, *camísa*, *juízo*, *ajuíza*, *altívo*, *altíva*, *prolíxo*, *prolíxa*, *apito*, *cabrito*; except *púlpito*, *vómito*, *decrépito*, *espírito*, *débito*, and some others.

*Rules for such Words as make their Penultima in o.*

Words ending in *obo*, *oba*, *obe*, *obra*, *obro*, *obre*, have their penultima long; as, *lôbo*, *lôba*, *arrêba*,



*arrôbe, glóbo, alcôva, óbro, óbra, cábre, cêbra, dôbro.*

Words ending in *ocho, ochá, oco, oca, oço, oça, odo, oda, ode, oso, osa, ose*, have the penultima long; as, *agarrócho, garrócha, carócha, biôco* (except *atôcco*), *massaróca, minbóca, almôço, môça* (a girl), *môça* or *mesa* (a notch), *almôço* (when a verb), *carróça, lôdo, bôda, bóde, póde* (the third person singular of the present indicative of the verb *poder*), *pôde* (the third person singular of the preterperfect definite of the same verb), *galbófa, bófe*.

Words ending in *ofro, ofra, ofre*, are long; as, *alcaxofra, cofre, enxófre*.

Words ending in *ogo, oga, ogue*, are long; as, *af-fôgo, affôga, affôgue, desafôgo* when a verb, and *desafôgo* when a noun.

Words ending in *ojo, oja*, have the penultima long; as, *despôjo* when a verb, *nôjo, despêjo* when a noun.

Words ending in *olo, ola, ole*, are long; as, *viôla, gallinhôla, bóla, engôle, miôlo, bólo, rebôlo, tôlo, cebôla*; except *pérola, frívolo, benévolo, malévolo*.

Words ending in *omo, oma, ome*, have the penultima long; as, *mordômo, redôma, fome*; except *Thomé*.

Words ending in *onbo, onba, ono, ona*, have the penultima long; as, *bisônko, risônba, dôno, atafôna, dôna*; except *atesono* and *unesono*.

Words ending in *opla, opo, opa, ope, opro, opra, opre, oque*, have the penultima long; as, *manópla, tôpo, topa, galópe, assôpro* when a verb, *assôpra, assôpre, assôpro* when a noun, *botóque*.

Words ending in *oro, ora, ore*, are long in the penultima; as, *penbôro, penbóra, penbóre, chôro* when a noun, *chôro* when a verb; except *bácoro, rémora, pólvora, arvore*.

Words ending in *orro, orra*, are long; as, *soc-côro, môrro, cachôrra*; and some others ending in *oso, ose, osa, ozo, oza*; as, *primorôso, primorôsa, industriôso, industriôsa, ciôzo, ciôza, descôse*.

Words



Words ending in *oto, ota, ote*, have their penultima long; as, *gûto, gôta, bôta, devôto, frôta, capôte, garrote*.

Words ending in *ovo, ova, ove*, are long in the penultima; as, *ôvo, corcôva, aprôve*.

Words ending in *oxo, oxa*, are long in the penultima; as, *rôxo, rôxa, pintarrôxo*.

*Rules for such Words as make their Penultima in u.*

Words ending in *ubo, uba, ubro, ubra, ucho, ucha, uco, uca, uço, uça*, make the penultima long; as, *adúbo, adúba*; except *súcubo, încubo*, and some others; *incúbro, incúbra, machúcho, embucha, cadúco, cadúca, rebuço, embuça*.

Words ending in *udo, uda, ude, ufo, ufa, ufe, ugo, uga, ujo, uja*, have the penultima long; as, *felpúdo, felpúda, almúde, pantúfo, adúfa, adúfe, sanguesúga, caramújo, azambúja*.

Words ending in *ulbo, ulba, ulbe, ulo, ula, ule, umo, uma, ume, unbo, unha, unbe*; as, *bagúlbo, borbúlba, entulbe, engúlo, engúla, bulebúle*; except *vocabulo, vestibulo, ângulo, régulo, opúsculo, trémulo, patíbulo, thuríbulo*, and some others; *consúmo, consúma, cardúme, testemúnbo, testemúnba, empunbe*.

Words ending in *uno, una, une, upo, upa, upe, uque, uro, ura, ure*, are long in the penultima; as, *desúno, fortúna, desúne, apúpo, apúpa, apúpe, estúque, madúro, madura, apúre*.

Words ending in *uso, usa, use, uzo, uza, uze, uto, uta, ute, uxo, uxa, uxe*, have the penultima long; as, *parafuso, parafusa, parafuse, reduzo, reduza, redúze, condúto, labuta, enxúta, labúte*; except *cômputo* when a noun; *repúxo, empúxa, empúxe*; and some others ending in *uvo, uva, uve*; as, *viúvo, viúva, enviúve*.

N. B. When the penultima is immediately followed by another vowel, you must make the following observations.

*A before*



*A* before *e* must be accentuated with the acute accent, and pronounced accordingly; as, *sáe*, *cáe*: but before *i* has no accent.

*A* before *o* must be pronounced and accentuated thus, *bacalbáo*; but when the relative *o* is added to the third person singular of the present indicative, then *a* has no accent; as, *âma-o*.

*E* before *a* is accentuated thus, *baléa*; and sometimes with the acute, as *assembléa*, *idéa*, and some others; and sometimes has no accent at all, as in *gávea*, *fémea*, and some others.

*E* before *o* is exceeding sonorous and long, as in *chapéo*, *coruchéo*; except *páteo*, *férreo*, *plúmbeo*, *aureo*, *argênteo*.

*I* before *a*, *e*, *o*, is long; as, *dizía*, *fazía*, *almo-tolía*; except such as are borrowed from the Latin; as, *nêscia*, *comédia*, *seria*, *ciência*, *prudência*, and *sá-bia* when an adjective, &c. *I* before *o* and *e*, is long; as, *desvíe*, *desvío*; except *vício* and some others.

*O* before *a* is accentuated thus, *corôa*, *tôa*, *môa*, *esmôa*.

*O* before *e* is long in the words *dóe*, *móe*, *róe*, and in the verb *sóe* when it signifies *to be wont*; but when it signifies *to sound*, it is to be accentuated thus, *sõe*.

*U* before *a* is long; as *rúa*, *charrúa*; except *melliflua*, *insua*.

*U* before *e* and *o* is long; as, *conclúo*, *recúo*, *con-clúe*, *recúe*; except *mellifluo*, and some others derived from the Latin.



## C H A P. IX.

*Etymology of the Portuguese Tongue from the Latin.*

**T**HE Portuguese retains so great an affinity to the Latin, that several words of the last are preserved in the first, by only allowing a small alteration; as may be easily seen in the following observations.

I. The *o* of the Latin words is preserved in some Portuguese ones; nay, some Latin words are entirely preserved in the Portuguese; as, *hospede, corda, porta, &c.*

II. The *u* is changed into *o*; as, *forca, goloso, estopa, mosca, amamos, &c.* from *furca, gulofus, stupa, musca, amamus, &c.*

III. The diphthong *au* is frequently changed into *ou*; as, *louvavel, ouro, couve, mouro, &c.* from *laudabilis, aurum, caulis, maurus, &c.*

IV. The *e* is preserved in several Portuguese words; as, *certo, servo, erva, terra, ferro, &c.* from *certus, servus, herba, terra, ferrum, &c.*

V. The *e* takes the place of *i*; as, *enfermo, seco, &c.* from *infirmus siccus, &c.* and the *i* is sometimes preserved, as in *indigno, benigno, &c.* from *indignus, benignus, &c.*

VI. The *b* is also changed into *v*; as, *arvore, duvidar, dever, estava, amava, &c.* from *arbor, dubitare, debere, stabat, amabat, &c.*

VII. The *c* is changed very often into *g*; as, *digo, agúdo, amigo, migalha, &c.* from *dicto acutus, amicus, mica, &c.*

VIII. *Cl* is changed into *ch*; as, *chamar, chave, &c.* from *clamare, clavis, &c.*

IX. When the *c* in Latin is followed by *t*, this letter is changed into *ç*; as, *acção, dicção, licção, &c.* from *actio, dictio, lectio, &c.* and sometimes the



the *c* before *t* is changed into *i*; as, *feito*, *leito*, *noite*, *leite*, *peito*, &c. from *factus*, *lectum*, *nocte*, *lacte*, *pectus*, &c. Finally, both the *c* and *t* are preserved in a great number of words; as, *aeto*, *afflicto*, *distincto*, &c. from *actus*, *afflictus*, *distinctus*, &c.

X. The *d* is several times lost; as, *roer*, *excluir*, *raio*, &c. from *rodere*, *excludere*, *radius*, &c.

XI. The *f* is frequently preserved; as in *filho*, *fazer*, *fervor*, *formoso*, &c. from *filius*, *facere*, *fervor*, *formosus*, &c.

XII. The *g* is changed into *i*; as, *reino*, from *regnum*. Sometimes it is quite lost, as in *dedo*, *frio*, *setta*, *final*, *bainha*, &c. from *digitus*, *frigus*, *sagitta*, *signum*, *vagina*, &c.

XIII. The *b* is placed instead of the *l*; as, *alho*, from *allium*. Sometimes it is added; as, *artilho*, *alheo*, *folha*, *conselho*, &c. from *articulus*, *alienus*, *folium*, *consilium*, &c.

XIV. The *n* is sometimes added, and sometimes taken off; as, *mancha*, *ilha*, *salitre*, *esposo*, from *macula*, *insula*, *sal nitrum*, *sponsus*, &c.

XV. The *mn* is preserved by many Portuguese writers in the words *alumno*, *calumnia*, *columna*, *damno*, *solemne*, *somno*, from *alumnus*, *calumnia*, *columna*, *damnum*, &c.

XVI. The double *nn* of the Latin is preserved in several words; as in *anno*, *innocencia*, *innocuo*, *innavegavel*, *innovar*, *connexo*, &c. from *annus*, *innocentia*, *innocuus*, *innavigabilis*, *innovare*, *connexus*, &c.

XVII. The *gn* and *gm* are preserved in several Portuguese words; as in *augmento*, *fragmento*, *enigma*, *benigno*, *digno*, *indigno*, *ignominia*, &c. from *augmentum*, *fragmentum*, *ænigma*, *benignus*, *dignus*, &c.

XVIII. The *e* and the *i* after *n* are sometimes changed into *b*; as in *aranha*, *vinha*, *Hespanha*, *castanha*, &c. from *aranca*, *vinea*, *Hispania*, *castanea*, &c.

XIX. The *p* is changed into *b*; as in *cabra*, *cabello*, *cabeça*, &c. from *capra*, *capillus*, *caput*, &c.

Some-



sometimes *pl* is changed into *ch*; as, *chaga*, *chóro*, *buva*, &c. from *plaga*, *ploro*, *pluvia*, &c.

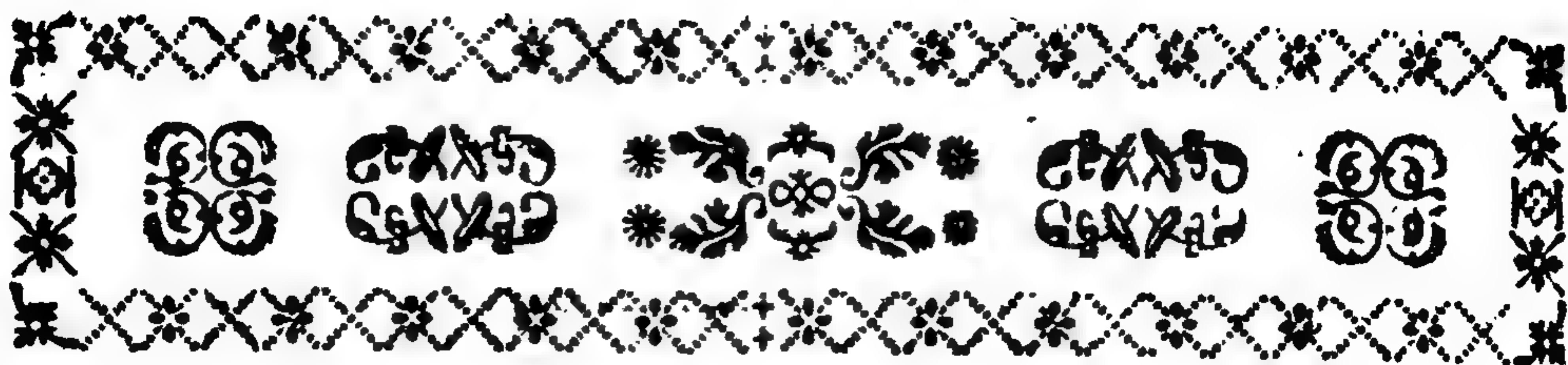
XX. The *q* is changed into *g*; as, *igual*, *alguem*, *antigo*, *agoa*, *aguia*, &c. from *equus*, *aliquis*, *intiquus*, *aqua*, *aquila*, &c.

XXI. The *t* is likewise changed into *d*; as, *cadea*, *fado*, *lado*, *nadar*, *piedade*, &c. from *catena*, *fatum*, *latus*, *natare*, *pietas*, &c. The *ti* of the Latin is sometimes changed into *ça*, and sometimes into *ci*; as in *graça*, *clemencia*, *paciencia*, &c. from *gratia*, *clementia*, *patientia*, &c.

N. B. All these alterations are not general in all the words, but are used in several; and on some occasions the Latin word is preserved without any mutilation or variation. And as it would be endless to pretend to shew all the affinity between the Portuguese and the Latin, I shall only observe, that they sometimes add, and sometimes take off letters from the Latin roots; as in *facil*, *debil*, *final*, *material*, *estrepito*, *estomago*, *expectadôr*, *especular*, &c. from *facilis*, *debilis*, *finalis*, *sirepitus*, *spectator*, &c.

E N D of the S E C O N D P A R T.





A NEW  
PORTUGUESE  
GRAMMAR.



PART III.

CONTAINING

- I. *The most elegant Phrases of the Portuguese Language.*
- II. *Such Words as are most used in Discourse.*
- III. *A Collection of the choicest Portuguese Proverbs.*
- IV. *Familiar Dialogues.*

*The different Significations of andar, to go.*

**A**NDAR a pé  
Andar a cavallo  
Andar pella posta  
Andar em coche,  
Andar a vela,  
Andar pella bolina,  
Andar para diante.  
Andar para traz,  
Andar a trás de alguem,

**T**O go on foot.  
To ride on horseback.  
To ride or go post.  
To ride in a coach.  
To sail.  
To sail with a side wind.  
To go forward.  
To go backward.  
To go behind, or after one,  
also to follow, to press, to  
solicit a person.

*Andar*



<i>Andar ás apalpadellas,</i>	To grope along, to grope or feel one's way.
<i>Andar com o tempo,</i>	To go according to the times.
<i>Andar pejáda,</i>	To be with child, or big with child.
<i>Andar sabida,</i>	( <i>speaking of a bitch</i> ) To be proud.
<i>Andar perdido,</i>	To go astray.
<i>Andar de pé,</i>	To be sickish, but not bed-ridden.
<i>Andar com honra,</i>	To act like an honest man.
<i>Anda,</i>	Go.
<i>Anda para diante,</i>	Go on.
<i>Andar de esguélha,</i>	To go fideling.
<i>Andar de mal para peor,</i>	Out of the frying-pan into the fire.
<i>Andar de reixa com alguém,</i>	To bear one a grudge, to have a spleen against him, to owe him a spite.
<i>Com o andar do tempo,</i>	At long run.
<i>Andar de galope,</i>	To gallop.
<i>Andar em corpo,</i>	To be in cuerpo, or to be without the upper coat or cloak, so as to discover the true shape of the cuerpo or body.
<i>Anda o mundo as avessas,</i>	The world is come about.
<i>Andar espalhados,</i>	To lie about.
<i>Andar trabalhando nalguma obra,</i>	To be about some piece of work.
<i>Andar de gatinhas,</i>	To go crawling.
<i>Andar de cócoras,</i>	To go on one's breech.
<i>Andar dizendo,</i>	To publish or report.

*The different Significations of dar and dar-se.*

<i>Dar,</i>	To give, to strike.
<i>Dar a entender,</i>	To make one believe.
<i>Dar fé,</i>	To credit, to believe, also to perceive, to descry, to take notice, to smell out.
<i>Dar or vender fiado.</i>	To sell upon credit.
<i>Dar á luz.</i>	To publish.
<i>Dar senhoria,</i>	To call one a gentleman:
<i>Dar tu, or fallar a alguém por tu,</i>	To thee and thou one.

*Dar-*



<i>Dar-se a partido, or lançar-se ao partido de alguém,</i>	To side with one, to be for him.
<i>Dar palavra,</i>	To promise.
<i>Dar huma salva,</i>	To give a volley of shot, or to make a discharge of guns in honour of some persons of quality.
<i>Dar fiador,</i>	To bail.
<i>Dar principio, or fim,</i>	To begin, or end.
<i>Dar conta,</i>	To give an account.
<i>Dar-se ao estudo,</i>	To apply one's self to study.
<i>Dar em que fallar,</i>	To make one speak, to give an occasion to be talked of.
<i>Dar entrada,</i>	To give access to.
<i>Dar causa,</i>	To give cause.
<i>Dar em que entender,</i>	To vex one sadly, to trouble one.
<i>Dar de beber,</i>	To give drink.
<i>Dar couces,</i>	To kick.
<i>Dar hum coscorraõ,</i>	To give a box on the ear.
<i>Dar pancadas,</i>	To beat with a cudgel.
<i>Dar murros,</i>	To cuff.
<i>Dar marradas,</i>	To butt, as rams do.
<i>Dar o faro a alguém de algu- ma cousa,</i>	To smell out a matter.
<i>Dar huma estocada,</i>	To give a thrust.
<i>Dar os bons dias,</i>	To bid one good-morrow.
<i>Dar a guardar,</i>	To give in keeping.
<i>Dar á costa,</i>	To run a-ground.
<i>Dar com alguém,</i>	To meet with one by chance, to light upon a person.
<i>Dar em alguém,</i>	To strike one, also, to accuse one.
<i>Dar cartas,</i>	To deal or give the cards.
<i>Dar sobre o inimigo,</i>	To fall upon the enemy.
<i>Dar os parabens,</i>	To congratulate.
<i>Dar os parabens a alguém da sua chegada,</i>	To bid one welcome.
<i>Dar a mão ajudando.</i>	To give a helping hand.
<i>Dar a escolher,</i>	To let one take his choice.
<i>Dar enfado a alguém,</i>	To molest one.
<i>Dar no alvo,</i>	To hit the mark.
<i>Dar as costas,</i>	To run away, to betake one's self to flight.
<i>Dar parte de hum negocio,</i>	To impart a business.



<i>Dar pello amor de Deos,</i>	To give for God's sake.
<i>Dar hum a furra,</i>	To beat one soundly.
<i>Dar hum a volta em redondo,</i>	To walk a turn.
<i>Dar hum a vista de olhos,</i>	To cast an eye on.
<i>Dar alcance ao que se dezeja,</i>	To obtain, or compass one's wish.
<i>Dar suspiros,</i>	To sigh.
<i>Dar ouvidos,</i>	To give hearing.
<i>Dar em rosto,</i>	To upbraid, to cast in the teeth.
<i>Da cá,</i>	Give hither.
<i>Deu-me hum a dor,</i>	I was taken with a pain.
<i>Dar que fazer a alguem, or occupar alguem,</i>	To employ one, to set him at work, to set him upon some business.
<i>Dar horas,</i>	To strike.
<i>O relogio dá horas,</i>	The clock strikes.
<i>Dar a alma a Deos,</i>	To give up the ghost, to die.
<i>Dar comsigo em alguma parte.</i>	To cast one's self into a place, or to go to a place.
<i>Dar leite,</i>	To suckle.
<i>Dar garrote,</i>	To strangle.
<i>Dar vozes,</i>	To cry out, to bawl.
<i>Dar o sol nos olhos,</i>	Is for the sun to shine in one's eyes.
<i>Dar razoens,</i>	To debate, or contend.
<i>Dar comsigo no chão,</i>	To fall upon the ground.
<i>Dar fruto,</i>	To bear fruit.
<i>Dar as mãos,</i>	To shake hands.
<i>Dar com a porta na cara de alguem,</i>	To shut the door upon one.
<i>Dar com a porta nos olhos a al- guma cousa, (metaph.)</i>	To slight, to despise a thing.
<i>Dar pressa,</i>	To press or hasten.
<i>Dar treguas, (metaph.)</i>	To respite, to give some respite
<i>Esta travessa vai dar á rua larga,</i>	This lane strikes, or goes into the broad street.
<i>Dei no pensamento de, &amp;c.</i>	It came into my head to, &c.
<i>Quem me dêra estar em casa!</i>	How fain wou'd I be at home!
<i>Não sabe aonde ha de dar com a cabeça,</i>	He does not know which way to turn himself.
<i>Isto vos ha de dar na cabeça,</i>	The mischief will light upon your own head.
<i>Dar com a cabeça pellas pare- des,</i>	To beat one's head against the wall.



<i>Dar em todos, or dizer mal de todos,</i>	To have a satirical virulent tongue, to spare no body.
<i>Dar boa conta de si,</i>	To give a good account of himself, to behave cleverly.
<i>Dar á conta,</i>	To pay on account.
<i>Eu darei conta disso,</i>	I'll be answerable for it.
<i>Elle deu em ir áquelle lugar,</i>	He began to use that place.
<i>Dar em droga,</i>	To grow a very drug.
<i>Dar em ridicularias,</i>	To grow, or become ridiculous.
<i>Dar huma figa a alguem,</i>	To flirt at one, to fig, to give the fico.
<i>Dar-se por culpado,</i>	To acknowledge one's self guilty.
<i>De nenhuma sorte vos deis por entendido, or achado,</i>	Take no notice of any thing.
<i>Dar-se por aggravad,</i>	To make a shew of anger.
<i>Dar-se por satisfeito,</i>	To rest satisfied.
<i>Dar-se por vencido,</i>	To submit, to surrender one's self a prisoner, or to yield a point.
<i>Dar-se por desentendido,</i>	To feign one's self ignorant, to take no notice of any thing, to make as if one saw nor knew not.
<i>Quando se der a occasião,</i>	When occasion shall require it
<i>Dar-se pressa,</i>	To be in haste, to make haste.
<i>Elle deu-se a toda a sorte de vicios,</i>	He gave himself over to all manner of vices.
<i>Naõ se me dá disso,</i>	I matter it not.
<i>Que se vos dá a vos disso?</i>	What have you to do with it?
<i>Pouco se me dá,</i>	I care but little.
<i>Naõ se lhe dá de morrer,</i>	He matters not his dying.
<i>Elles daõ se muyto bem,</i>	They agree mighty well together.
<i>Esta carne naõ se dá bem comigo,</i>	This meat does not agree with me.

*Of the different Significations of the Verb estar.*

We use the verb *estar* to mark an action of repose, by putting the verb that follows in the gerund; as, *elle está escrevendo*, he is writing.

*Estar* has several other significations; as,

*Estar*



*Estar em pé,*  
*Estar bem, ou mal,*  
*Estar assentado,*  
*Estar para sair para fora,*  
*Estar com o sentido em França,*  
*or estar com o sentido em ou-*  
*tra parte,*  
*Está muyto bem,*  
*Está para chover,*  
*Estar para cabir,*  
*Estar para morrer,*  
*Estar em duvida,*  
*Estaremos a ver,*  
*Estar com huma mão sobre a*  
*outra.*

*Estar em casa,*  
*Isto vos está bem,*  
*Aquilo não me está bem,*

*Estar dormindo,*  
*Estar fazendo,*  
*Estar de nojo,*  
*Estar álferta,*  
*Estar de sentinella,*  
*Estar alegre,*  
*Elle está como quer,*  
*Estar em perigo,*  
*Estar encoftado,*  
*Estar esperando,*  
*Estar muyto tempo,*  
*Estar calado,*  
*Estar ou viver com outros,*  
*Estar de cima,*  
*Estar debaxo,*  
*Estar bem aviado,*  
*Estar a espera,*  
*Estar enamorado,*  
*Estar na cama,*  
*Estar de cama,*  
*Estar no campo,*  
*Estar com faude, or de faude,*  
*Estar quieto,*  
*Estar neutral,*  
*Estarei por tudo o que vos pa-*  
*recer mais conveniente,*

To stand upright.  
 To be well, or ill.  
 To be fitting.  
 To be just going out.  
 To have one's wits a wool-  
 gathering.

It is well, it is very well.  
 It is going to rain.  
 To be ready to fall.  
 To be like to die.  
 To be in doubt.  
 We will expect the issue.  
 To stand idle.

To stay at home.  
 This becomes you very well.  
 That does not become me  
 well.

To lie sleeping.  
 To be a doing.  
 To be in mourning.  
 To look heedfully about.  
 To stand centry.  
 To be merry.  
 He lives in clover.  
 To be in danger.  
 To lean upon.  
 To expect.  
 To stay a good while.  
 To be hushed.  
 To dwell with others.  
 To lie over.  
 To lie under.  
 To be in an ill taking.  
 To lie in wait.  
 To be in love.  
 To be a-bed.  
 To be bed-ridden.  
 To live in the country.  
 To be in health.  
 To stand still, or to be quiet.  
 To stand neuter.  
 I shall stand to whatsoever you  
 shall think fitting.



*A dificuldade está em, &c.*

*Estar por alguém,*

*Estar por, or em lugar de, &c.*

*Elle estava na altura do Cabo da Boa Esperança,*

*Eu não quero estar as razões com vósco,*

*Está quanto quizeres,*

*Aonde estais de casa?*

*Estarei pello que differ a pessoa que for de vosso mayor agrado,*

*Não podemos estar por isso,*

*Não quero estar pella vossa sentença,*

*Como está v'nce?*

The difficulty consists in, &c.  
To stand for one, to be of his side.

To stand for, or signify.  
He stood off the Cape of Good Hope.

I won't stand, or dispute, with you.

Stay as long as you please.  
Where do you live?

I'll refer it to whom you please

We can't stand to that.

I won't take your judgment.

How do you do, sir?

*Estar*, joined with the infinitive of a verb and the particle *para*, signifies to be ready, or about doing a thing, which has always reference to the signification of the verb; as,

*Estou para ir,*

*Estou para comprar hum cavallo,*

*Estou para cazarme,*

*Esta casa está para cair,*

*Estou para dizer,*

*Não está no meu poder,*

*Estar com a boca aberta (metaph.)*

*Estar de regimento,*

*Estar fiado em alguém,*

*Estar no fundo,*

*Estar de frente,*

*Estar em competencia,*

*Estar ao lume,*

*Estar de longe,*

*Estar ao ar,*

*Estar alto,*

*Estar á mão direita de alguém,*

I am going, I am ready to go.  
I am about buying a horse.

I am going to be married.  
This house is ready to fall.  
I dare say.

It is not in my power.

To stare, to look, to hearken attentively.

To keep to a diet.

To trust to, to rely or depend upon one.

To lie at the bottom:

To lie over-against.

To stand in competition.

To stand by the fire.

To stand at a distance.

To stand in the air.

To stand high, or in a high place.

To be at one's right hand, to have the first place.

*Elle*



<i>Ele esteve em perigo de afogar-se,</i>	He was like to be drowned.
<i>Naõ estar no caso de, &amp;c.</i>	To not be able, or in the case of, &c.
<i>Estar á ordem de alguém,</i>	To be at one's disposal.
<i>Isso não está nos termos,</i>	That is not right, it won't do.
<i>Naõ estou no caso,</i>	I don't understand the case.
<i>Estar ás razcens,</i>	To contend, to strive, or quarrel.
<i>Estar bem com alguém,</i>	To be in favour with one, to live in friendship with him.
<i>Estar bem,</i>	To be well, to be at one's ease.
<i>Bem aviado estaria eu, se, &amp;c.</i>	It wou'd be very bad for me, indeed, if, &c.
<i>Estar em conceito de homem honrado,</i>	To be looked upon as an honest man.
<i>Estar na fé,</i>	To believe, to think, or suppose.
<i>Estar de posse,</i>	To possess, to have the possession of a thing.
<i>Deixai estar isso,</i>	Let that alone.
<i>Estar em si,</i>	To be in one's right wits.
<i>Estar fora de si,</i>	To be out of one's wits.
<i>Deixaivos estar (a sort of threatening)</i>	I'll be revenged on you, you shall pay for it.

We have already observed the difference between *ser*, and *estar*. See page 55.

*Of the different Significations of fazer and fazer-se.*

*Fazer* signifies *to do, to make, to create; also to form of materials; also to feign, to seem, to make as if.*

<i>Elle fez que não o via,</i>	He made as if he did not see it.
<i>Fazer huma saúde,</i>	To drink or to toast a health.
<i>Elle lhe fez cortar a cabeça,</i>	He caused his head to be cut off.
<i>Fazer pé atraz (metaph.)</i>	To fall or draw back, to give ground; also yield, to submit.
<i>Que tendes vos. que fazer com isto?</i>	What have you to do with it? or what is that to you?
	Q 3 <i>Fazer</i>



*Fazer brio de alguma cousa,*

*Fazer fim ao dezejo,*

*Fazer por alguma cousa,*

*Faço por isso,*

*Fazer ao negocio, or ao caso,*

*Fazer esmolas,*

*Fazer gosto,*

*Fazer gosto,*

*Fazer o gosto, or a vontade a  
alguem,*

*Fazer paralelo,*

*Fazer de comer,*

*Fazer fumo,*

*Fazer auzente a alguem,*

*Faz frio,*

*Fazer gente,*

*Fazer em pedaços,*

*Fazer zombaria de alguem,*

*Não façais caso disso,*

*Fazer aguada,*

*Isto me faz vir a agoa á boca,*

*Fazer alto,*

*Fazer casa (in playing at  
draughts)*

*Fazer a cea,*

*Fazer caras,*

*Fazer enredos,*

*Fazer carrancas,*

*Fazer caso,*

*Fazer de tripas coração,*

*Fazer muito caso de alguma  
cousa,*

*Não faço caso delle,*

*Fazer festa,*

*Fazer huma festa,*

To make a pride of a thing,  
to take glory in it.

To satisfy one's desire, or  
longing.

To take pains, to endeavour,  
to labour to a certain pur-  
pose, to work for a certain  
end.

I endeavour after it.

To come to the purpose.

To give alms.

To spend.

To like, to be pleased with.

To please one, to comply  
with one's desire.

To parallel, to compare.

To dress the meat.

To smook.

To believe one absent.

It is cold.

To raise men, soldiers.

To pull into pieces.

To mock, or to laugh at a  
person.

Do not mind that.

To take in fresh water.

This makes my teeth, or  
mouth, water.

To halt in a march.

To put two men in the same  
square.

To get supper ready.

To make mouths.

To form a secret design against  
another.

To powt.

To make account of, or  
esteem.

To make one's utmost efforts.

To make great account of a  
thing, to make much of it.

I don't mind him.

To endear, to fondle.

To give an entertainment, to  
feast.

*Fazer*



<i>Fazer as vezes de alguém,</i>	To make any business for another.
<i>Fazer trapasas,</i>	To chicanery, to cavil, to use tricks, or quibbles.
<i>Fazer lugar,</i>	To make room.
<i>Fazer mercê,</i>	To grant a favour.
<i>Fazer ouvidos de mercador,</i>	To make as if one were deaf.
<i>Fazer suas necessidades,</i>	To ease one's self, to go to stool.
<i>Ter que fazer,</i>	To be busy.
<i>Fazer exercicio,</i>	To use exercise.
<i>Fazer exercicio (a military word),</i>	To exercise.
<i>Os soldados estão fazendo exercicio,</i>	The soldiers exercise.
<i>Que fazeis aqui?</i>	What make you here?
<i>Fazer hum vestido,</i>	To make a suit of cloaths.
<i>Fazer huma ley, hum discurso,</i>	To make a law, a speech.
<i>Fazer guerra,</i>	To make war.
<i>Fazer saber alguma coisa a alguém,</i>	To make one acquainted with a thing.
<i>Fazer enraivecêr alguém,</i>	To make one mad.
<i>Fazer huma conta,</i>	To cast up an account.
<i>Fazer conta,</i>	To intend, or to propose.
<i>Elle fazia huma conta, e sabia-lhe outra,</i>	He was much disappointed.
<i>Fazer contas com alguém,</i>	To settle the accounts with one.
<i>Isso não me faz nada,</i>	It makes nothing to me, that does not concern me.
<i>Fazer pausa,</i>	To make a stand.
<i>Fazer de alguém tolo,</i>	To make a fool of one.
<i>Fazer dinheiro de alguma coisa,</i>	To make money of a thing, to sell it.
<i>Tornar a fazer,</i>	To make a gain.
<i>Fazer a pazaõ,</i>	To pledge one
<i>Ter que fazer com alguém,</i>	To deal with one, or to have to do with one.
<i>Fazer a alguém hum gilvêz na cara,</i>	To mark one in the face.
<i>Fazer honra,</i>	To honour.
<i>Fazer fé,</i>	To make known, to testify, to witness.
<i>Fazer forte,</i>	To fortify, or strengthen.



*Fazer menção,*

*Fazer mal,*

*Fazer de alguém o que huma  
pessoa quer,*

*Fazer huma aposta,*

*Faz vento,*

*Faz hoje outo dias,*

*Fazer vida com alguém,*

*Fazer a sua vontade,*

*Fazer o possível,*

*Naõ fareis nada com isso,*

*Naõ façais mais assim,*

*Se tornardes a fazer assim,*

*Dezejo que faça a sua fortuna,*

*Custou-me muito a fazello vir,*

*Fazer a outrem o que quizeram-  
mos que outrem nos fizesse  
a nós,*

*Naõ tenho que fazer com isso,*

*Fazer o que alguém manda,*

*Ter que fazer cum huma molher  
carnalmente,*

*Fazei de mim o que vos pa-  
recer,*

*Fazer hum grande estrondo,*

*Elle foi o que fez tudo naquelle  
negocio,*

*Que fareis hoje?*

*Fazer hum filho a huma mol-  
her,*

*Fazer o seu curso,*

*Fazer huma boa casa,*

*Fazer a barba,*

*Fazer a cama,*

*Naõ sei que lbe fazer,*

*Fazer grande negocio,*

*Fazer o seu officio,*

*Fazer profissão,*

To mention.

To hurt.

To dispose of one.

To lay a wager.

The wind blows.

This day se'nnight, or a week  
ago.

To cohabit, or dwell together.

To do as one pleases.

To do one's best, or endeavour,  
to do one's utmost.

You will do no good in it.

Do so no more.

If ever you do so again.

I wish he may do well.

I had much to do to get him  
to come.

To do by others as we would  
be done by.

I have nothing to do with it.

To do as one is bid.

To have carnally to do with  
a woman.

Do with me as you shall think  
fit.

To keep a heavy do.

He was the do-all in that  
business.

What will you do to-day? or  
how do you employ your-  
self to-day?

To get a woman with child.

To finish its course, as a star  
does.

To raise, to set up one's family.

To shave.

To make the bed.

I can't help it.

To drive a great trade.

To exercise, or discharge.

To profess.

*Todos*



<i>Todos o faziaõ morto,</i>	They gave out that he was dead.
<i>Fazer vir,</i>	To call, or send for.
<i>Fazer entrar, ou sabir alguem,</i>	To call in, or out, to bid one come in, or out.
<i>Isto não faz nada,</i>	It is no matter.
<i>Não sei que fazer disso,</i>	I have no need of it.
<i>Ja não tenho que fazer com elle,</i>	I have done with him.
<i>Fazer hum livro,</i>	To write a book.
<i>Fazer amizade com alguem,</i>	To make friendship, to get into friendship with one.
<i>Fazer exemplo em alguem, or castigallo para dar exemplo,</i>	To make one a public example.
<i>Fazer huma cousa muito ao desentendido,</i>	To do a thing very covertly, so that people can't apprehend that it is done on set purpose, and with a design.
<i>Fazer das suas,</i>	To play the fool, to dodge, to play tricks.
<i>Elle sempre está fazendo das suas,</i>	He is always playing his foolish tricks.
<i>Fazer fôscas,</i>	To bully, to provoke, to excite by words, or actions of contempt; <i>also</i> to elude, or deceive by false show.
<i>Fazer de pessoa,</i>	To behave courageously.
<i>Fazer jurar alguem,</i>	To tender the oaths to one, to put one to his oaths.
<i>Fazer saltar, or usar pellos ares,</i>	To blow up.
<i>Fazer boa vezinhança,</i>	To keep fair with one's neighbours.
<i>Fazer lenha,</i>	To fell wood.
<i>Fazer a ronda,</i>	To walk the rounds.
<i>Fazer dividas,</i>	To run into debt, to contract debts.
<i>Faz luar,</i>	The moon shines.
<i>Fazer violencia,</i>	To offer violence.
<i>Fazer-se ao trabalho,</i>	To inure one's self to hardships.
<i>Fazer-se tolo,</i>	To play the ninny.
<i>Fazer-se velho,</i>	To grow old, or to grow in years.
<i>Fazer-se feo,</i>	To grow ugly.
<i>Fazer-se soberbo,</i>	To grow proud.



*Faz-se tarde,*

It grows late.

*Fazer-se* signifies also *to feign, to pretend, to seem, to make as if.*

*Faz-se mouco,*

He won't hear.

*The different Significations of ter and ter-se.*

*Ter que fazer,*

To be busy.

*Ter odio,*

To hate.

*Ter por costume,*

To be wont.

*Ter alguém por ignorante,*

To believe one ignorant.

*Ter cuidado de,*

To be careful of.

*Ter cuidados,*

To be full of care, or thoughtful.

*Ter fastio,*

To loath, to see food with dislike.

*Ter animo,*

To have courage.

*Ter boa fama,*

To be well spoken of.

*Ter cara d'aço,*

To have a brazen face.

*Ter necessidade,*

To be in want.

*Ter pressa,*

To be in haste.

*Ter muitos fumos,*

To be very proud.

*Ter grande presumpção,*

To presume much on one's self.

*Ter razão,*

To be in the right.

*Naõ ter razão,*

To be in the wrong.

*Ter alguma cousa debaixo da  
lingua,*To have a thing at one's  
tongue's end.

*Ter alguma cousa na ponta da lingua,* we say, to have a thing at one's fingers ends, to have it perfect. They also say, *saber alguma cousa nas pontas dos dedos,* which exactly answers to our English phrase.

*Ter feições feiticeiras,*

To have a taking look.

*Ter má fama,*

To be ill spoken of.

*Ter ciumes,*

To be jealous of.

*Ter meyo,*

To be able, or have means.

*Ter no pensamento,*

To bear in mind.

*Ter obrigação,*

To be obliged.

*Ter medo,*

To be fearful.

*Ter razão, e mais que razão,*

To have reason to spare.

*Que*



<i>Que tendes vos com isso?</i>	What is that to you?
<i>Ter carruage, e criados,</i>	To keep a coach and servants.
<i>Ter a alguém suspenso,</i>	To hold one in suspense.
<i>Homem que tem boa feição,</i>	A man of good address, a polite man.
<i>Ter mesa franca,</i>	To keep open table, to keep a table where a man may come without bidding.
<i>Ter frio,</i>	To be cold.
<i>Ter as costas quentes em alguém.</i>	To be backed, or supported by one.
<i>Ter por bem,</i>	To approve of, or consent.
<i>Tenho o por doudo,</i>	I take him to be mad.
<i>Ter mão na sua resolução,</i>	To be still in one mind.
<i>Ter com que,</i>	To have wherewith.
<i>Naõ tendes de que vos queixar,</i>	You have no reason of complaint.
<i>Naõ tendes que, &amp;c.</i>	It is useless, or it will be to no purpose for you to, &c.
<i>Isto naõ tem nada que fazer, com o que eu digo,</i>	That is nothing to the purpose.
<i>Ter entre mãos,</i>	To have in hand, or in one's possession.
<i>Tenho isso por certo,</i>	I hold that for a certainty.
<i>Ir ter com alguém,</i>	To address one's self to one.
<i>Venho ter com v'nce para saber como passa a senhora fullana,</i>	I address or apply myself to you to know how miss such a one does.
<i>Ir ter a algum lugar,</i>	To go to a place.
<i>Esta rua vai ter ao mercado,</i>	This street strikes or goes into the market.
<i>Ter alguém por si,</i>	To be supported, or protected by one.
<i>Temos por nós a authoridade dos mais prudentes,</i>	We have the wisest men of our side, or of our opinion.
<i>Ter para si,</i>	To think, or imagine, to reckon.
<i>Ter em muito,</i>	To set much by.
<i>Ter em pouco,</i>	To value but little.
<i>Ser tido em boa conta,</i>	To be esteemed, regarded, or valued, to be in great esteem.
<i>Ter mão,</i>	To hold or keep in, to restrain.
<i>Ter mão nalguma cousa,</i>	To bear up, to support, to prop, to keep up, to hold up.



*Atomos que tem mão buns nos  
outros,*

*Tenha mão, or tem mão,*

*Ter,*

*Ter-se em pé,*

*Ter-se bem a cavallo,*

*Ter-se em casa,*

*Ter-se com alguém,*

*Não me posso ter com rizo,*

*Não se pode ter, que não falle,*

Atoms that stick together,

Hold, stop.

To contain.

To stand, to stand up.

To sit fast, or well on horse-  
back.

To keep at home.

To hold out, to resist, to  
stand against one, to cope  
with one, to oppose, or resist  
him.

I can't forbear laughing.

He can't forbear speaking.

### *The different Significations of querer.*

*Querer signifies to will, to be willing, and to be-  
lieve; as,*

*Querem alguns,*

*Querer bem,*

*Querer mal,*

*Antes querer,*

*Queira Deos,*

Some believe.

To love.

To hate.

To have rather.

God grant it, God send it may  
be so.

*Mas quero que assim seja,*

*Que quer dizer aquelle homem?*

*Que quer dizer isto?*

I grant it, suppose it were so.

What does that man mean?

What means this? what's the  
meaning of that?

*Isto quer dizer que, &c.*

*Eu quero absolutamente que, &c.*

*Eu assim o quero,*

*Elle quer que vós obedezais,*

*Não quero,*

*Elle o fará quando quizer,*

The meaning is that, &c.

I positively resolve that, &c.

I'll have it so.

He will have you obey.

I will not, I won't.

He will do it when he pleases,  
or when he has a mind to it.

*Elle quer partir amanhã,*

He intends, or has a mind, to  
set out to-morrow.

*O mal que lhe eu quero me ven-  
ha a mim,*

I wish him no more harm  
than I do myself.

### *Haver, to have.*

*Tu has de hir,*

*Elle ha de vir hoje,*

You must go.

He is to come to-day.

If



<i>Se eu houver de hir,</i>	If I shall be obliged to go.
<i>Aindaque isso me houvesse de</i>	Though I were to lose my
<i>custar a vida,</i>	life for't.
<i>Elle está todo nũ, e ha de ter</i>	He is all naked, he must needs
<i>muyto frio,</i>	be very cold.
<i>Haveis vós de estar em casa,</i>	Shall you be at home?
<i>Eu hei de achar-me lá,</i>	I must be there.
<i>Elle há de ser enforcado,</i>	He is to be hanged.
<i>Eu hei de receber dinheiro,</i>	I am to receive money.
<i>Ves he quó haveis de jogar,</i>	You are to play.
<i>Aquillo he que vos havieis de</i>	You should do that.
<i>fazer,</i>	
<i>Haver por bem,</i>	To take in good part.
<i>Haver por mal,</i>	To take in ill part.
<i>Que ha de ser,</i>	That is to be hereafter.
<i>Aquillo nunca ha de ser,</i>	That will never be.
<i>Eu hei de ser a causa da sua</i>	I shall be the death, or ruin
<i>morte, ou ruina,</i>	of him.
<i>Para haver de fallar, ouvir,</i>	In order to speak, hear, &c.
<i>&amp;c.</i>	
<i>Que ha de ser de mim?</i>	What is to become of me?
<i>Haver filhos,</i>	To beget, to become the
	father of children.
<i>Haver filhos de huma molher,</i>	To beget on, or upon a wo-
	man.
<i>Livros do deve, e ha de haver,</i>	Books of debtor and creditor.
<i>Haver mister,</i>	To want.
<i>Há mister apressar-se,</i>	It is necessary to haste, or to
	make haste.

*Haver*, when impersonal, is rendered into English by the verb *to be*, preceded by *there*; as,

<i>Há,</i>	There is, or there are.
<i>Ha homens tão malvados,</i>	There are men so wicked:
<i>Havia huma molher,</i>	There was a woman.
<i>Há alguns bons e outros más,</i>	There are some good, and
	some bad.
<i>Há muytas casas,</i>	There are several houses.
<i>Há alguma cousa de novo?</i>	Is there any news?
<i>Há mais de huma hora,</i>	It is above an hour since.
<i>Há muyto tempo,</i>	Long since.
<i>Há perto de huma hora que,</i>	It is almost an hour since he
<i>elle sahio,</i>	went out.
<i>Há hum anno,</i>	A year ago.

*Há*



*Há oito dias,*

Eight days ago.

*Há perto de 20 legoas daqui lá,*

It is near upon 20 leagues thither.

*Naõ há,*

There is not.

*Elle cuida que naõ há mais que purgar,*

He believes that purging is all in all, or that purging is the only remedy in such a case.

*Haver-se, v. r.*

To carry, to behave one's self.

*Elle sabe como se ha de haver, or elle sabe como ha de haver-se,*

He knows how to behave himself.

*Elle houve-se de maneira que, &c.*

He behaved himself in such a manner, that, &amp;c.

N. B. When this verb is used impersonally, it is always followed by the particle *de*; as,

*Ha-se de mister dinheiro,*

Money is wanted.

*Ha-se de fazer, ou dizer isto,*

This must be done or said.

*Ha-se de fazer o que elle quiser,*

People must do what he pleases.

*Hir*, a neuter and irregular verb, *to go, to walk, to march*; also, *to grow, to reach any estate gradually, to be going.*

*Hir por már e por terra,*

To travel by sea and land.

*Come vão os vossos negocios?*

How go your concerns?

*Tudo vai bem,*

All is well, all goes well.

*As suas cousas vão muyto mal,*

Things go very ill (or very hard) with him.

*Hir á mão,*

To hinder, to obstruct, to prevent, to obviate.

*Hir passando,*

To grow out of fashion or use.

*Hir andando,*

To go on or forward, to keep or hold on his way; also to proceed, to continue on, to prosecute.

*Hir andando, or passando,*

To shift, to pass life not quite well, to live though with difficulty.

*Que vai de novo?*

Is there any thing new?

*Que vai nisto? or onde vai isto a dar comfigo?*

What of all this?

Hi.



*Hir debaixo,*  
*Hir para,*  
*Quanto mais vamos para a primavera,*  
*mais compridos são os dias,*

To come by the worst.  
 To approach, to go near.  
 The nearer the spring, the longer the days.

*Hir de mal para peor,*  
*Hir diante,*  
*Hir por diante,*  
*Hir ao encontro,*  
*Hir ao fundo,*

To grow worse and worse.  
 To go before.  
 To go on, or forward.  
 To go to meet.  
 To sink, or fall to the bottom.

*Hir e vir,*

To go to and fro, to go and come.

*Naõ faço mais do que hir e voltar,*  
*Issi ja lá vai,*  
*Eilo lá vai,*  
*Eilo vai,*  
*Que vos parece daquella molher?*  
*eilo vai, ella não he fea,*

I will not stay, I shall be back presently.  
 'Tis a thing past and done.  
 There he goes.  
 So so, pretty well.  
 How do you like that woman? She is so so, she may pass.

*Eilo vai, folgo que assim seja,*  
*Como as cousas agora vão,*

Well, well, I am glad on't.  
 As things go now, as the world goes.

*Por que parte ides,*  
*Deos vá comvosco,*

Which way d'ye go?  
 The Lord of heaven go with you.

*Hir á roda do mundo,*  
*Hir com alguem,*  
*Esta travessa vai ter á rua larga,*  
*Eu o irei ver de caminho,*

To go about the world.  
 To go along with one.  
 This lane goes into the broad street.  
 I will call upon him as I go along.

*Hir continuando o seu caminho,*  
*Hir fóra do seu caminho,*  
*Hir hum de hum banda, e outro á outra,*

To go along.  
 To go out of one's way.  
 To go afunder.

*Hir para trás,*  
*Hir detrás,*  
*Hir atraz de alguem,*  
*Hir em alcance de alguem,*

To go backward.  
 To go behind.  
 To pursue, to go after one.  
 To go after one, in order to overtake him.

*Hir buscar,*  
*Hir para dentro,*  
*Hir para fóra,*

To go for, or fetch.  
 To go in.  
 To go out.

*Hir*



<i>Hir peregrinando;</i>	To go a pilgrimage.
<i>Hir fazer huma embaxada,</i>	To go on an embassy.
<i>Hir ver, cantar, &amp;c.</i>	To go to see, to sing, &c.
<i>Vamos,</i>	Come, come on.
<i>Hir fazer hum negocio,</i>	To go upon a business.
<i>Hir com a maré,</i>	To go with the tide.
<i>Hir par a par com alguem,</i>	To go cheek by jole with one.
<i>Vai para quatro mezes que eu aqui cheguei,</i>	It is now going on four months since I came hither.
<i>Ide em paz,</i>	Depart in peace.
<i>O tempo vai abrandando,</i>	The weather grows mild.
<i>Hir (at cards),</i>	To go, to lay, to stake, to set.
<i>Hir-se, v. r.</i>	To go, to go away, to go one's way, to depart, also to run or leak.
<i>Hir-se a olha, ou a panella,</i>	Is for the pot to boil over.
<i>Hir-se o enfermo,</i>	Is for a sick man to die.
<i>A quarésma vai-se acabando,</i>	Lent draws to an end.
<i>Hir-se,</i>	To slip, or pass away (as time).
<i>Nada se vai mais depressa que o tempo,</i>	Nothing goes faster than time.
<i>Aquelles montes vão se va embora,</i>	Those mountains extend, or stretch themselves.
<i>Hir-se embora,</i>	To go away, also to be over.
<i>Esperai até que a calma se estendendo,</i>	Stay till the heat be over.
<i>Vai-te embora; que não sabes engodar a gente,</i>	Away, or go, you know not how to wheedle people.
<i>Hir-se de huma carta (at cards)</i>	To throw away a card.
<i>Vai-se fazendo tarde,</i>	It grows late.
<i>Vai-se chegando a noite,</i>	The night draws on.
<i>Vai-se chegando o tempo da sega,</i>	It grows near harvest.
<i>Vai-se acabando o meu consulado,</i>	My consulship is almost at an end.
<i>Hir-se escapulindo,</i>	To sneak away.
<i>Hir-se á mão,</i>	To refrain, to forbear, to abstain.
<i>Hir-se impersonal; as, vai-se, they go; foi-se, they are gone; hir-se ha, they shall go.</i>	



To pray.

<i>Senhor, como amigo, façame o favor,</i>	Dear sir, do me the favour
<i>Eu vos peço, or peçovos,</i>	I pray you.
<i>Peçolhe em cortesia,</i>	I beseech you.
<i>Peçolho encarecidamente,</i>	I intreat, or conjure, you to do it.
<i>Peçolhe por favor que, &amp;c.</i>	I beg of you that, &c.
<i>Façame a fineza,</i>	Do me the kindness.
<i>Peçolhe perdão,</i>	I beg your pardon.

Expressions of Kindness.

<i>Minha vida,</i>	My life.
<i>Minha alma,</i>	My dear soul.
<i>Meu amor,</i>	My love.
<i>Meu querido, minha querida,</i>	My little darling.
<i>Meu coração,</i>	My dear love, my love.
<i>Filho do meu coração,</i>	My dear child.
<i>Filha da minha alma,</i>	My little honey.

To shew Civility.

<i>Agradeço a vñce,</i>	I thank you.
<i>Dou a vñce os agradecimentos,</i>	I give you thanks.
<i>Beijo as mãos de vñce,</i>	I kiss your hand.
<i>Falo-hei com todo o gosto,</i>	I will do it chearfully.
<i>Com todo o meu coração,</i>	With all my heart.
<i>De muito boa vontade,</i>	Heartily, willingly.
<i>Veja vñce se o posso servir nalguma cousa,</i>	See if it is in my power to serve you.
<i>Disponha vñce como lhe parecer deste seu criado,</i>	Do what you please with your servant.
<i>Estou esperando pellas ordens de vñce</i>	I wait for your commands.
<i>Fa que vñce assim ordena,</i>	Since you will have it so.
<i>As ordens de vñce</i>	At your service.
<i>Fico muito obrigado a vñce</i>	I am very much obliged to you.
<i>Quer vñce que eu faça alguma cousa,</i>	Have you any thing to command me?
<i>Sem cerimonia,</i>	Without ceremony.
<i>Não tem vñce mais que fallar,</i>	You need but to speak.
<i>Façame a honra de me por aos pés da snra</i>	Present my respects, or duty, to my lady.

R

Não